ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

"Škoda Partner"
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐**YES**

☐**NO**

Limitation of Škoda extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or:

km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a)] Whichever comes first.

Prepaid service option

Applies to the Czech Republic

☐Standard	☐5 years, max. 60,000 km
☐Plus	☐5 years, max. 100,000 km
	☐5 years, max. 150,000 km

For information on you Škoda prepaid service, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not permitted without the written consent of Škoda Auto a.s..

All proprietary rights in this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by Škoda Auto a.s.

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: Škoda Auto a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© Škoda Auto a.s. 2023

Vehicle owners

1. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

2. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owners

6 About the Owner's Manual

7 About the Owner's Manual

8 Video tutorials

9 Explanations

10 Instructions in infotainment
10 Functionality

12 Vehicle overviews
12 Front and side vehicle area
14 Rear vehicle area
15 Driver's seat
15 Centre console and passenger seat
16 Engine compartment

17 Indicator lights
17 Functionality
17 Warning lights overview

21 Correct and safe use
21 Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle
21 New vehicle or new parts
21 Regular checks
21 Incorrect vehicle adjustments
22 Sensor and camera maintenance
22 Engine compartment
22 Handling fluids
22 12V vehicle battery
23 Using vehicle electrical sockets
23 Before your journey
23 Sitting safely
23 Correct belt webbing arrangement
24 Correct steering wheel position
24 Securing children properly
24 Transporting objects safely
25 Safe driving
26 Stop the vehicle safely
26 Exiting the vehicle
26 Different climatic conditions
26 Emergency calls
27 After an accident

29 Key, locks and alarm
29 Key
30 Central locking
32 Keyless locking
33 Alarm

34 Doors, windows and the boot lid
34 Doors
34 Child safety lock on the rear doors
35 Windows – with electrical operation
36 Sliding/tilting roof
37 Sun visors – with electrical operation
37 Sunblind for the rear window
37 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
38 Sun visors
38 Boot lid – with manual operation
38 Boot lid – with electrical control
40 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
40 Releasing the boot lid

41 Seats, steering wheel and mirrors
41 Front seat – with manual operation
41 Front seat – with electrical operation
42 Memory function of the seat
43 Seat massage function
43 Rear seats
44 Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment
44 Rear seat belt parking position
44 Headrests
45 Sleep package
45 Front armrest
45 Rear armrest
45 Load-through device
46 Steering wheel
47 Interior mirror
47 Exterior mirrors

49 Restraint systems and airbags
49 Seat belts
50 Child seat
52 Fasteners for child seats
54 Airbags
55 Passenger front airbag switch

57 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
57 Exterior lighting
58 Daytime running lights
58 Automatic activation of lights
59 High beam and headlight flasher
59 Turn signal
59 Fog lights
60 Hazard warning lights function
60 Parking lights function

60 The Corner function
60 Adaptive functions of the headlights
61 The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions
61 High beam Light Assist assistant
61 Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist
62 Interior lighting
63 Interior background lighting
64 Wipers and washers

67 Heating and air conditioning
67 Manual air conditioning
68 The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
72 Auxiliary heating and ventilation
73 Windows heating
74 Seat heating and ventilation
75 Heated steering wheel

76 Driver information system
76 Analog instrument cluster with MaxiDot display
77 Virtual cockpit
78 Head-Up display
79 Driving data
80 Vehicle status
80 Button SET

82 Swing Infotainment system
82 Infotainment overview
82 System
83 Display
84 Infotainment keypad
85 Control centre
85 Radio
88 Media
90 Mobile devices management
92 Phone
94 Wi-Fi
94 SmartLink

98 Infotainment Bolero
98 The Infotainment system overview
98 System
99 Screen
100 Infotainment keyboard
101 Voice control
103 Control centre
103 Radio
107 Media
110 Mobile device management
112 Telephone
115 Wi-Fi
116 SmartLink
119 Navigation

124 Infotainment Columbus
124 The Infotainment system overview
124 System
125 Screen
126 Keypad
127 Voice control
129 Control centre
129 Radio
133 Media
136 Mobile device management
138 Telephone
141 Wi-Fi
142 SmartLink
145 Navigation

150 Online services
150 Škoda Connect
151 MyŠkoda application
151 Škoda Connect services user registration and activation
151 Setting personal data protection
152 User management
154 Personalisation
155 Online service management
156 eSIM data connection
156 Online system update
157 Shop
157 Information calls
158 Breakdown calls
158 Planning a service visit
158 Vehicle health card
158 Škoda Connect services

160 Starting and driving
160 Start
160 Starting issues
161 START-STOP
161 Manual gearbox
161 Automatic gearbox
163 Driving modes
164 Economical driving style
164 Driving with a trailer
166 Tow eye and towing
167 Brakes
168 Electric parking brake
169 Auto Hold automatic holding function
169 48 V battery

171 Driver Assist systems
171 Braking and stabilising systems
172 Front Assist
173 Pedestrian detection system
173 Speed limiter
175 Cruise control system
175 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
178 Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane
179 Travel Assist
181 Lane change assist system Side Assist
182 Traffic Sign Recognition
183 Crew Protect Assist
183 Driver Alert fatigue detection
184 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

184 Hill descent assistant
184 Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

186 Parking Assist systems
186 Park Pilot parking aid
187 Rear view camera
188 Area View, Top View
189 Rear Traffic Alert
190 Exit warning
190 Park steering assistant

193 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
193 Bonnet
193 Engine oil
195 Coolant
196 Engine electronics
196 Particulate filter
197 Exhaust gas control system
197 Fuel filter
197 Radiator blinds
197 Fuel filler flap
197 (AdBlue®)
198 Petrol
200 Diesel
201 CNG (compressed natural gas)

204 12V vehicle battery and fuses
204 12V vehicle battery
205 Using jump start cables
206 Fuses
207 Fuses in the dash panel
208 Fuses in the engine compartment

210 Wheels
210 Tyres and rims
211 All-season or winter tyres
211 Snow chains
212 Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel
213 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
214 Tyre repair kit
215 Tyre pressure
216 Tyre pressure monitor
216 Wheel bolt cover caps
216 Full-width wheel cover

218 Storage space and interior equipment
218 Luggage compartment equipment
218 Emergency equipment
219 Tool kit
219 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
219 Fasteners in the boot
221 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
221 Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot
222 Cargo elements in the luggage space
222 Securing nets
222 Multifunction pocket
223 Net partition
224 Double-sided carpet
224 Boot lid
225 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
225 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
226 Partition in the boot
227 Partition with fastening element in the boot
227 Load-through bag
227 Interior equipment front
228 Interior equipment rear
229 Storage pocket for phone
229 Parking permit holder
229 The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment
229 The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment
230 USB inputs
230 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
230 Glasses holder
231 Pencil holder
231 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
231 Storage compartment under the front seat
231 Storage compartment for umbrella
231 Storage compartment for hand brush
232 Phonebox
232 Cup holder
233 Cup holder Easy Open
233 Multimedia holder
233 Waste container
233 Ceiling
233 Tablet holder
234 12V socket
234 230-Volt power socket
235 230 volt socket and USB connections
235 Storage compartment

236 Roof rack and the towing device
236 Roof rack
236 Swivelling hitch

239 Maintenance and cleaning
239 Service events
239 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
240 Škoda prepaid service
240 Interior
241 Exterior
243 Ice scraper

244 Technical data and specifications
244 Technical data regulations
244 Vehicle identification data
244 Stickers and labels
244 Axle weights and loads
245 Operating weight
246 Vehicle dimensions
247 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
248 Personal data

248 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
251 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
252 Product recycling
252 Trademarks Information
253 Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

255 Engine specifications
255 1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine
255 1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC engine
256 1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC engine
256 1.0 l/81 kW TSI engine
256 1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine
257 1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine
257 2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine
258 2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine
259 1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine
259 2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR engine
259 2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine
260 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine
261 2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

262 Index

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child» *page 51*.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the illustrations may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Printed version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance, and only some technical parameters.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems » *page 10*
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child» *page 51*.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the illustrations may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems » *page 10*
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4

Video tutorials

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

- Side Assist – activation and deactivation » *page 182*
- Lane Assist – activation and deactivation » *page 179*
- Fatigue detection assist – activation » *page 183*
- ACC – setting » *page 178*
- Front Assist – activation and deactivation » *page 173*
- KESSY – operation » *page 33*
- Dynamic Road Sign Display – how it works » *page 182*
- Climatronic – operation » *page 72*
- The Infotainment system – individual customisation » *page 125*
- Navigation – basic functions » *page 149*
- Digital instrument cluster – operation » *page 78*

Explanations

Specialist garage

"Specialist garage" is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for Škoda vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a Škoda Authorised workshop or Škoda Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Škoda Service Partner

"Škoda Service Partner" is a garage that is contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to service Škoda vehicles and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Škoda Partner

"A Partner of Škoda" is a company that has been contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to sell new Škoda vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using Škoda Genuine Parts and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"**Pressing**" – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

"**Holding**" – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units

Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

Symbols

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Instructions in infotainment

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in this way:

› Tap > > on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Tap MENU > > on the Infotainment system screen.

If or is not displayed, check for available system updates.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

› How to search
› Interactive images
› Symbols
› Topics
› Tutorial videos
› Simply Clever
› About the manual

Search

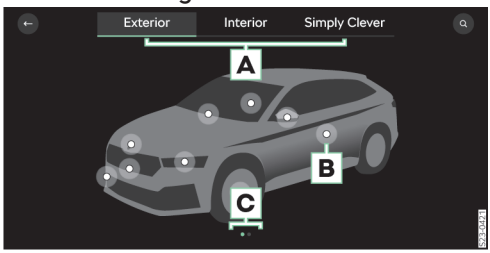
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

› Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

› To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
› When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
› If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

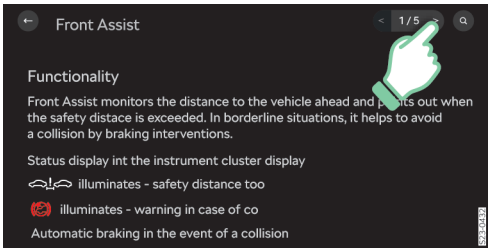
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

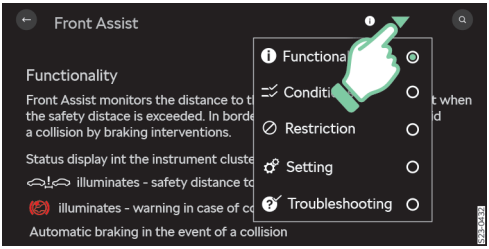


› To display more information, press > or <.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car

› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

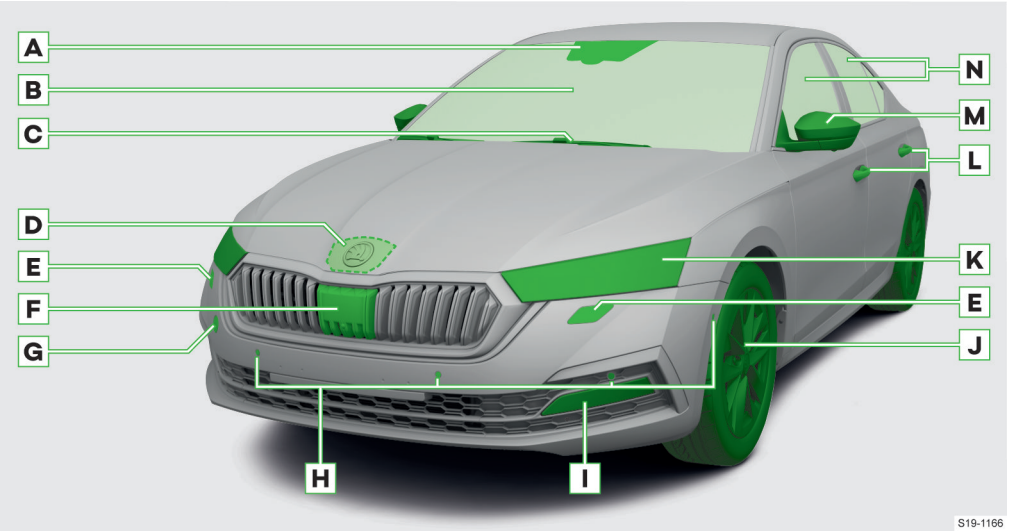
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and side vehicle area



A Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
- Assist systems camera
- Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 58
- Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 64
- Humidity and solar intensity sensors

B Windscreen – heating » page 74

C Windscreen wiper – operation » page 64

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » page 193

E Headlamps washers » page 64

F Cover on the radiator grille (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Frontal radar sensor for the assist systems
- Assist systems camera

G Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 166

H Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

I Front fog lights – operation » page 59

J Wheels:
- Tyres and rims » page 210
- Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 213
- Tyre repair kit » page 215
- Tyre pressure » page 215

› Tyre pressure monitor **» page 216**

K Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation **» page 57**
- › High beam Light Assist assistant **» page 61**
- › Dynamic Light Assist headlights assistant **» page 61**

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Opening the door **» page 34**
- › Keyless locking (KESSY) **» page 32**

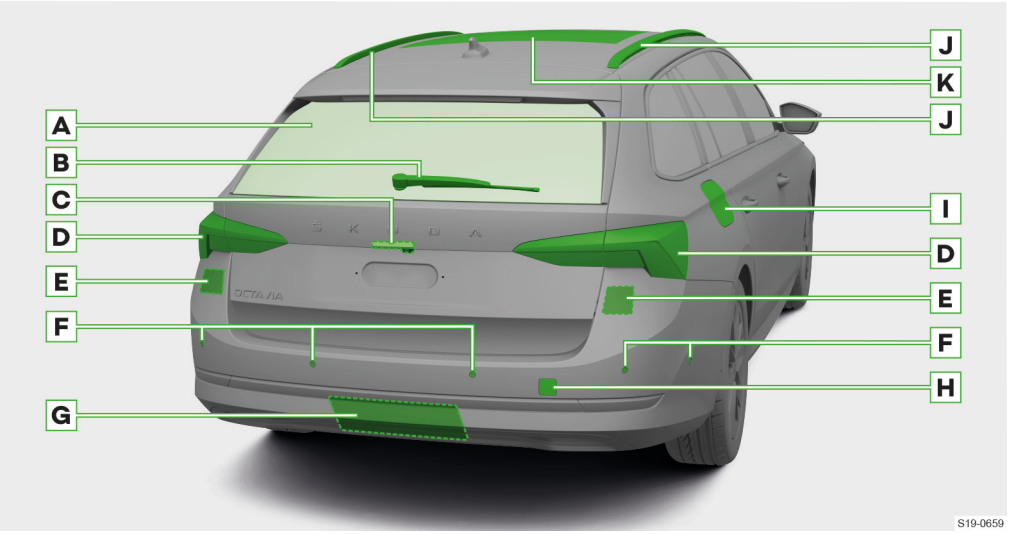
M Wing mirrors (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation **» page 47**
- › Assist systems camera

N Side door windows – control **» page 35**

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean **» page 22**.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window – heating » *page 74*

B Rear window wiper and washer – operation » *page 64*

C Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Boot lid with manual operation » *page 38*
- Boot lid with electrical operation » *page 39*
- Assist systems camera

D Tail lights:
- Operation » *page 57*
- Rear fog lights – operation » *page 59*

In some countries, the rear fog light is only on the driver´s side.

E Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

G Swivel towing bracket » *page 236*

H Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » *page 166*

I Fuel filler cap (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Opening » *page 197*
- Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures » *page 216*
- Sticker with specified fuel
- Ice scraper
- AdBlue® tank filler neck » *page 197*
- CNG filler neck » *page 202*

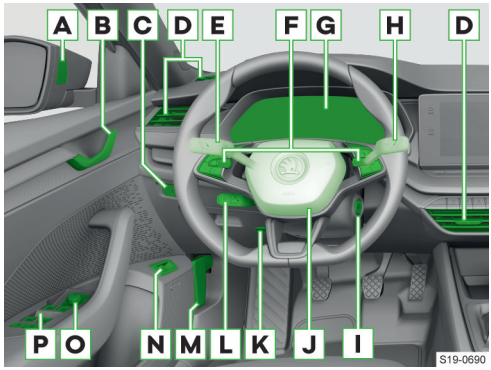
J Roof rack » *page 236*

K Sliding/tilting roof » *page 36*

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

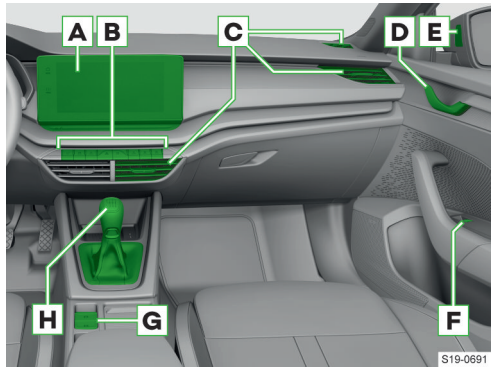
› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » *page 22*.

Driver's seat



- **A** Indicator light of lane change assistant Side Assist *» page 181*
- **B** Door handle *» page 34*
- **C** Light switches:
  - Exterior lighting *» page 57*
  - Fog lights *» page 59*
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Turn signal *» page 59*
  - High beam *» page 59*
  - Cruise control system *» page 175*
  - Speed limiter *» page 174*
  - High beam assistant *» page 61*
  - Headlight Assistant *» page 62*
- **F** Buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel *» page 46*
- **G** Instrument cluster (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Analog instrument cluster *» page 76*
  - Virtual cockpit *» page 77*
- **H** Operating lever:
  - Wipers and washers *» page 64*
- **I** Starter button *» page 160*
- **J** Steering wheel with horn and driver's front airbag *» page 54*
- **K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment *» page 46*
- **L** Adaptive cruise control *» page 177*
- **M** Bonnet release lock *» page 193*
- **N** Button for electrically operated boot lid *» page 39*
- **O** Wing mirror operation *» page 47*
- **P** Window operation *» page 35*

Centre console and passenger seat



- **A** Infotainment system (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Columbus *» page 124*
  - Bolero *» page 98*
  - Swing *» page 82*
- **B** Buttons (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - SET Quick access to the settings of some vehicle systems (depending on the vehicle equipment):
    - Switching off START-STOP *» page 161*
    - Switching off the ASR traction control *» page 171*
    - Switching on the ESC Sport stabilization system *» page 171*
    - Interior monitoring *» page 33*
    - Tyre pressure monitoring assistant *» page 216*
    - Access to other vehicle settings
    - Access to selection and settings of driving assistance systems
  - MODE Selecting driving mode *» page 163*
  - P Parking assistance systems menu *» page 186*
  - Hazard warning lights function *» page 60*
  - Central locking *» page 31*
  - CLIMA Displaying the air conditioning control screen on the Infotainment system display *» page 67*, *» page 69*
  - MAX Quick windscreen defogging/defrosting
  - REAR Rear window heating *» page 74*.
- **C** Air outlet nozzle
- **D** Door handle *» page 34*

E Indicator light of Side Assist lane change assistant *» page 181*

F Passenger window operation *» page 35*

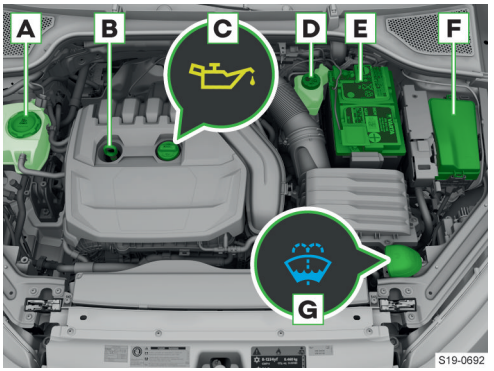
G Buttons:

- Ⓐ Auto Hold *» page 169*
- Ⓟ Parking brake *» page 168*

H Depending on vehicle equipment:

- Gear lever (manual gearbox) *» page 161*
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) *» page 161*

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion reservoir *» page 195*

B Engine oil dipstick *» page 194*

C Engine oil filler opening *» page 194*

D Brake fluid reservoir *» page 167*

E 12 volt vehicle battery *» page 204*

F Fuse box *» page 208*

G Windscreen washer fluid reservoir *» page 64*

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding hazard warning lights and the associated messages on instrument cluster display can lead to accidents, serious injuries, damage to the vehicle or a loss of warranty.

Indicator or warning lights on the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Illumination of some warning lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages on the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights

The following additional indicator lights will also light up on the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ - hazard

⚠ - warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » *page 17, Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a hazard in conjunction with another warning lamp » *page 17*.
	Front and rear seat belts not in use » *page 49*.
	Proactive passenger protection intervenes » *page 183*.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » *page 205*.
	Low charge level of the 48 volt battery » *page 170*.
	In conjunction with  – engine fault » *page 196*, » *page 205*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Engine oil pressure too low » *page 194*.
	Engine oil level too low » *page 194*.
	Coolant level too low » *page 195*.
	Coolant temperature too high » *page 195*.
	Brake fluid level too low » *page 168*.
	Electromechanical brake booster faulty » *page 172*.
	In conjunction with – brake system and ABS faulty » *page 172*.
	Flashes –parking on a slope that is too steep » *page 169*.
	Lights up – parking brake switched on » *page 168*.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » *page 46*.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » *page 46*.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » *page 163*.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » *page 163*.
	Take control immediately » *page 180*.
	Low level AdBlue® » *page 198*.
	System fault AdBlue® » *page 198*.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » *page 172*.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » *page 177*.
	Fault in the engine control system » *page 196*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning in conjunction with another warning lamp » page 17.
	The petrol supply has reached the reserve area. » page 199.
	The diesel fuel level has reached the reserve area. » page 201.
	The natural gas supply has reached the reserve area. » page 202.
	Low state of charge of the 48-volt battery » page 170.
	Washer fluid level too low » page 65.
	Bulb faulty » page 58.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 59.
	Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor faulty » page 194.
	Particle filter blocked » page 196.
	Parking brake error » page 169.
	ABS faulty » page 172.
	Worn brake pads » page 168.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 163.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » page 163.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 197.
	System fault AdBlue® » page 198.
	Low level AdBlue® » page 198.
	Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator faulty » page 216.
	Tyre pressure change » page 211, » page 216.

Symbol	Meaning
	Lights up – power steering faulty » page 46.
	Flashes – steering column lock not unlocked » page 46.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » page 46.
	KESSY – start problem » page 160.
	KESSY – no key found » page 33.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 164.
	Malfunction of the all-wheel drive » page 172.
	Emission control system faulty » page 197.
	illuminates, or if it does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on – diesel preheating system is faulty » page 196.
	Flashing – Diesel engine control faulty » page 196.
	Front passenger airbag activated » page 56.
	Flashes in conjunction with – key-operated switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 56.
	Front passenger airbag deactivated » page 56.
	Airbag system faulty » page 55.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 183.
	Lights up for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner with diagnostic device switched off » page 55.
	Ball rod not locked » page 237.
	ASR deactivated » page 172, » page 172.
	Lights up – ESC or ASR faulty » page 172.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR intervening » page 171.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 173.

Symbol	Meaning
	Front Assist not available » page 173.
	ACC not available » page 178.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 182.
	Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 190.
	Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant » page 190.
	Emergency Assist malfunction » page 184.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 179.
	Auxiliary heating or ventilation switched on » page 72.
	Fault in the engine control system » page 196.
	Left turn signal » page 59, » page 59.
	Right turn signal » page 59, » page 59.
	Rear seat belt in use » page 49.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 59.
	Front fog light switched on » page 59.
	Automatic gearbox is in P mode » page 162.
AUTO HOLD	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 169.
	Natural gas operation » page 202.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 178.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 177.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 175.
	Lights up – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 173.
	Flashes – the speed limiter's set limit has been exceeded » page 173.

Symbol	Meaning
	Travel Assist activated » page 180.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 180.
	Travel Assist activated – speed control is in progress » page 180.
	Low outside temperature » page 77.
	Main beam or headlight flasher switched on » page 59.
	Seat belt on the rear seat not in use » page 49.
	Seat belt on the rear seat in use » page 49.
	Illuminated - unoccupied rear seat » page 49.
	Flashes – rear seat belt not fastened » page 49.
	Headlight assistant switched on » page 62.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 61.
	The lights are not switched on » page 57.
	Low level of AdBlue® » page 198.
	AdBlue® system fault » page 198.
	Take control » page 180.
	Service events » page 239.
	Natural gas system test » page 202.
	Engine was shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 161.
	Engine was not shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 161.
	Natural gas operation » page 202.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 174.
	Lights up – speed limiter activated » page 173.
	In conjunction with – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 173.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC activated » page 177.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 177.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 177.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 177.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 177.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 175.
	Cruise control activated » page 175.
	Along with – cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 175.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 184.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 184.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 172.
	Safe distance not kept » page 172.
	Break recommendation » page 183.
	Driving mode Normal » page 163.
	Driving mode Eco » page 163.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 163.
	Individual Driving Mode » page 163.
	Offroad driving mode » page 164.
	Sport Driving Mode » page 163.

Correct and safe use

Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully to ensure that you are using the vehicle correctly. Always keep this Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the country of use, e.g. those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic, etc.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the vehicle technical parameters. Obstacles that exceed the vehicle's ground clearance » page 246 can damage the vehicle.
- Take care when carrying out operational, maintenance and self-assistance tasks to avoid damage or injury. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- Work on the vehicle's safety systems (seat belts and airbag system) may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This could include the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please follow the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's manual. These include car seats, roof racks, compressors, etc.
- Always observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle – running in the engine

The driving style during the first 1,500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- For the first 1,000 km load the engine to maximum 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine will consume up to 0.5 l/1,000 km. Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide optimum braking during the first 800 km – they must be worn off first. So drive with extra care.

New tyres

New tyres do not provide optimum grip for the first 500 km. So drive with extra care.

Regular checks

What you should be mindful of before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Repair any defects before driving. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Are the tyres undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread depth sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlights, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Are the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles and air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades frozen?
- Are all seat belt system components in good working order? Are the seat belts clean and the buckles free from obstruction?
- Are the spoilers undamaged?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Incorrect vehicle adjustments

Incorrect changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect the vehicle's safety-relevant and other functions.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
› Never place additional insulation material over the engine, e.g. a cover.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be limited for the following reasons:

› Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
› The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
› If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine compartment

Before you open the bonnet

Risk of scalding! Do not open the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the engine compartment



Do not touch the engine compartment
Beware of hot parts!
Beware of rotating parts!
Risk of electric shock!
Use prescribed engine oil

When working in the engine compartment

› Keep children away from the engine compartment.
› Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may start up automatically, even when the ignition is off.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12V vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke near the engine, and keep open flames and sparks away from it.
› If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, beware of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
› Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. These are fuel, oils, acid from the 12V vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
› If the skin is stained by operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
› Engine oil leaks can cause fire. Wipe away any leaks using a cloth.
› Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12V vehicle battery

Handling the 12V vehicle battery

The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is very caustic. Incorrect handling of the 12V vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

› When handling the 12V vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
› Do not tilt the 12V vehicle battery, as it may leak the battery acid.
› If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.

› Should electrolyte get into your eyes, rinse them immediately with water. Seek medical attention immediately.
› Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12V vehicle battery.
› Do not use a damaged 12V vehicle battery.
› Risk of short circuit Do not connect the poles of the 12V vehicle battery.

Using vehicle electrical sockets

Incorrect use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

› The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch the sockets that have become warm.
› Protect the sockets from liquids.
› If fluid does enter the power socket, dry it out completely before reusing.
› Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

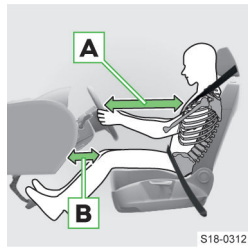
Before you set off

› Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
› Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
› Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
› Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Tell your fellow passengers to do the same.
› Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
› Only one person can be secured with one seat belt.
› Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
› Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.
› Do not leave any objects in the driver's footwell. They can get into the pedal area and restrict the pedal control.
› Always fix the floor mats securely in the driver's pedal area.
› Wear footwear that does not interfere with the safe operation of the pedals.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

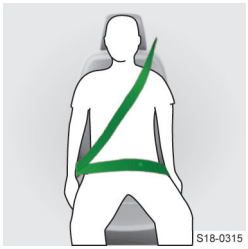
› Adjust the seat backrests to an upright position so that the whole of your back rests on them. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
› Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
› Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
› The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
› Keep your feet in the footwell.
› Use the entire seat.
› Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
› Do not place any limbs out the window.



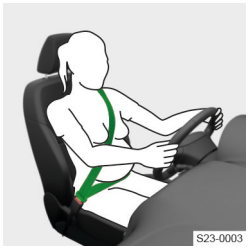
› Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least 25 cm.
› On a car with a driver's knee airbag, adjust the seat longitudinally so that the distance between your legs B and the dashboard at the location of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance from the dashboard at least 25 cm.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important to ensure that the seat belts offer the best possible protection.



- The shoulder belt must run down the centre of the shoulder, not across the neck.
- The shoulder belt must fit snugly against the body (it must not lead over multi-layered loose clothing).
- The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- The webbing must not be pinched or twisted or rub against sharp edges.
- The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects under clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing to adjust the seat belt according to body size.



- For pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that there is no pressure on the abdomen.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



- Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

- Do not carry a child on your lap, and do not secure the child and yourself with one seat belt.
- Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 51.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children who have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. This can result in life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume an incorrect sitting position during the journey, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – if the airbag system triggers, they could be seriously injured or killed.

Child secured in an incorrect sitting position is at risk from the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

Child properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

- Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to fifty times their weight. A thrown 1.5 litre water bottle can weigh up to 75 kg.

- Transport objects securely.
- Stow items so that they do not restrict the driver's ability to operate the vehicle.
- Keep the driver footwell clear.

› Only use laptops or other mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary.
› Stow small items in the storage boxes.
› Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
› Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
› Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
› Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage. Spilled liquids can damage the interior and electrical installation.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assist systems

The assist systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assist systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assist systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assist systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel » page 212 is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

› Inflate the wheel to the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
› Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
› Do not cover the warning label.
› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.
› Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
› Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assist systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle, e.g. the engine intake.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.

› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely

If the vehicle is not safely secured against moving off, it can do so spontaneously and cause an accident.

› When parking, look for a place with suitable ground.

Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves or spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts may cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. In vehicles with automatic gearbox, select the **P** mode.
4. Turn off the engine.
5. For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1. gear or reverse gear.
6. Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle.

› Injuries can occur when handling seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
› In emergency situations it may not be possible to leave the vehicle or resolve the situation.
› Very high or very low temperatures may pose a danger to life.
› The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked. This makes it impossible to open the doors or windows from the inside.

Turn off the SAFE function, if some persons remain in the locked vehicle *» page 30*.

Different climatic conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different climatic conditions from those specified, please contact a Škoda Partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to drive the car in your country?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to ensure that the car is fully functional?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to prevent damage to the vehicle, e.g. changing the coolant, the 12V vehicle battery, and similar?

Emergency calls

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least three years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

› The location and severity of the accident
› The number of passengers involved
› Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

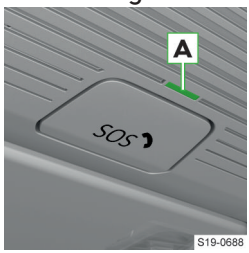
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light

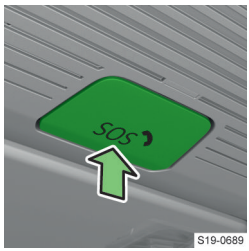


The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

- Illuminated green – the system is functional
- Flashing green – a call is in progress with the emergency line
- Illuminated red – there is a fault in the system, seek immediate assistance from a professional garage
- Not illuminated – the system is inoperative due to prolonged unavailability of the mobile network. If this condition persists, seek assistance from a professional garage

Operation

Manual call



The emergency call button is under the cover marked with the SOS symbol.

1. To **open** the cover, press against it.
2. To **close** the cover, press against it until it snaps audibly.



1. Hold the SOS button under the cover.
2. Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre on the Infotainment screen.

To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation on the Infotainment system display.

ⓘ A conversation can then be started manually, for example to report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. In a CNG-powered vehicle, remove objects from the vehicle that can cause sparks or fires (e.g. put out cigarettes, etc.).
5. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
6. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
7. Report the accident to the emergency services. If it is a CNG-powered vehicle, notify the emergency services.
8. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the vehicle's safety systems, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- Have the damaged, loaded or triggered safety system components replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.

6. Report the fire to the emergency services. If it is a CNG-powered vehicle, notify the emergency services.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ WARNING

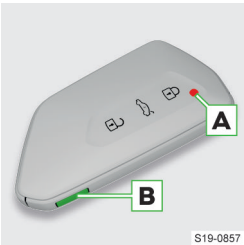
If it is a CNG-powered vehicle, please observe the following instructions:

› Do not attempt to extinguish the fire yourself.
› Do not stay near the burning vehicle.

Key, locks and alarm

Key

Key overview



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light
- **B** Locking button for removing the key part

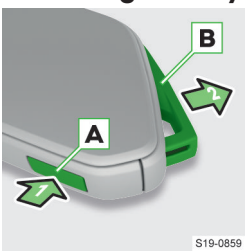
NOTICE

› Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

› Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key part



1. Press the safety button **A**. The **B** fob of the key part is tipped out.
2. Press again the **A** safety button.
3. Remove the key part.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

› The warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed.

Or:

› The display in the instrument cluster shows a message that the battery needs to be replaced.

› Replace the battery » *page 29, Changing the key battery*.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

This may be because:

› The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » *page 29, Changing the key battery*.

Or:

› The key is not synchronised.

Synchronise the key as follows:

1. Press any button on the key.
2. Unlock the door with the key via the locking cylinder within 1 min. » *page 31*.

If necessary, the key must be synchronised if a button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the remote control's effective range.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery

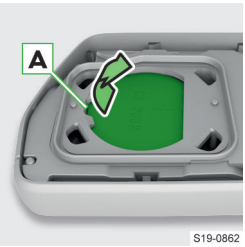


› Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.

› Push downwards against the top cover to release it.



› Open the battery cover.



› Insert a thin screwdriver into the A hole and remove the battery.
› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!
If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

› There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring » *page 33, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking after starting

All doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the speed of 15 km/h is reached. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

To unlock the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

› Open some of the doors from the inside.
› Press the central locking button
› Remove the key from the ignition (depending on vehicle equipment)

The vehicle will unlock automatically when the airbags are activated.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked automatically can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

› Key *» page 29*
› Keyless locking (KESSY) *» page 32*
› Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

› Press the button in the middle part of the dash panel.

The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks/unlocks all the doors and the boot lid.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing*

Or:

MENU > > > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the item *Central locking*.

All doors

All doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap unlock.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the front door and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button can be used to unlock the door on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

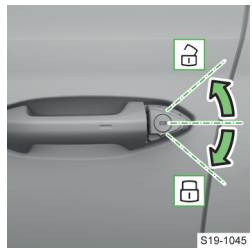
Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Removing the cover:

1. Pull and hold the left front door handle.
2. Insert the key part into the slot on the underside of the cover.
3. Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
4. Release the door handle.



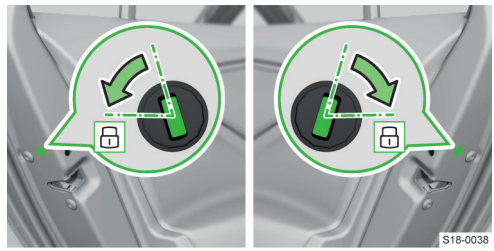
Locking and unlocking:

› Insert the removed part into the lock cylinder with the fob on the **right** and unlock or lock the vehicle.

Fitting the cover:

1. Pull the door handle and hold it.
2. Replace the cover.
3. Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



1. Open the door.
2. On a vehicle equipped with a slot cover, remove the cover.
3. Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.

4. Turn the key or the flathead screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (sprung position).
5. Close the door.

Keyless locking

Use

The keyless locking system (KESSY) allows you to unlock and lock the car without actively using the key.

Operation

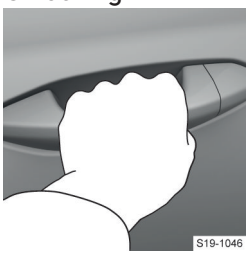
Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

ⓘ Also vehicles without keyless locking system have a dent in the door handle.

ⓘ If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

Unlocking



1. Hold the door handle.
2. Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Automatic unlocking when the key is close to the vehicle

If the vehicle is equipped with this function, it will automatically unlock when the key is brought close to the vehicle.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

ⓘ If individual doors or doors on one side of the vehicle are set to unlock, the vehicle will not unlock when the key is in the vicinity of the rear of the vehicle.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If you lock the key in the boot, you can still open the boot lid within 2 minutes.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

   Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
3. To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

   The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanent deactivation of keyless locking

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing*

Or:

MENU > > > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the *Central locking* > *Keyless Access*.

Activating/deactivating automatic unlocking when the key is in the vicinity of the vehicle

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing*.

Or:

MENU > > > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the *Central locking* > *Unlock vehicle when approaching*.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensor on the door handle

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

No key found when the ignition is switched on

illuminated
Message: No key found in the vehicle

› Put the key in the vehicle.

Video – Keyless locking (KESSY)

KESSY - operation
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-kessy

Alarm

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is automatically activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

› Opening the bonnet
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Tampering with the ignition lock
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement inside the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop in the vehicle's power network.
› The trailer is disconnected
› Door unlocked via the locking cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

The alarm system will only operate correctly when all the windows are closed.

The trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm, a warning alarm will sound.

ⓘ Deactivate the alarm before connecting or disconnecting the trailer.

Settings

The following alarm functions can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing alert

Deactivation also disables the SAFE function» ***page 30, Functionality***.

Deactivation

› Double lock command within 2 s.

Or:

› On the infotainment system menu **CAR** > > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing*
› Untick to deactivate interior monitoring.

Or:

› Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system

1. Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the *Central locking* item and deactivate interior monitoring by moving the slider to the left.

The deactivated functions are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

ⓘ After switching off the engine, a menu is displayed on the Infotainment screen, showing where the interior monitoring can be deactivated.

Doors, windows and the boot lid

Doors

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

A badly closed door can open while you are driving.

› Pull over, close the door and check that it is fully closed and secure.

⚠ WARNING

An open door may close in strong winds or on a gradient even if it is partially secured by the door limiter.

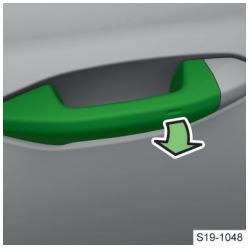
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the door when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area.

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door handle and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

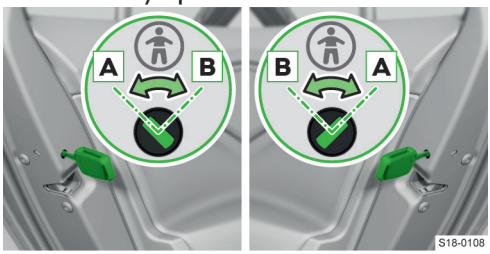
› Hold the handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child lock



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key part or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock turned off

B Child lock turned on

Electrically operated child lock



› Press the **left** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button tu turn on/off the child safety lock in the **right** rear door.

Activation of the safety lock is signalled by a light in the button.

After the safety lock is activated, the electric window control in the corresponding door is also locked.

Windows – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed again for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window moves back several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, and the obstacle has not been removed, the closing process will be stopped. At this time, it is not possible to close the windows automatically by pulling the button up completely. However, the force limiter is functional.

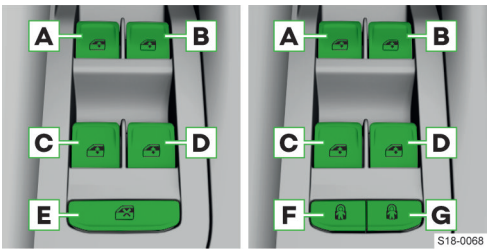
The force limiter will not operate if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds. The window will now close at full force! If you wait more than 10 seconds, the force limiter will be switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the windows are fitted with a force limiter, exercise caution when closing them.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on vehicle equipment:

A Front left window

B Front right window

C Rear left window

D Rear right window

E Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors.

F Deactivating/activating the button in the left rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) » page 34, Operation

G Deactivating/activating the button in the right rear door (part of the electrically operated child lock) » page 34, Operation

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press and hold the respective button lightly until the window opens to the desired position.

Or:

› Press the control down and the window opens automatically. Pressing the control again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› Pull the respective button lightly up and hold it until the window closes to the desired position.

Or:

› Push up the corresponding control until it stops; the window closes automatically. Pushing the control up again stops the closing process.

ⓘ After the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be opened and closed for about 10 minutes, provided none of the doors is opened.

Opening all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button fully depressed down to operate the driver's window.

ⓘ The sliding/tilting roof on vehicles equipped with one will be tilted up at the same time.

Closing all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button all the way up to operate the driver's window.

Or:

› On vehicles with keyless locking, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle.

Closing he windows is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

ⓘ The sliding/tilting roof on vehicles equipped with one will be closed at the same time.

Settings

Window operation can be set in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > ⚙ > *Exterior* > item for window operation

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the window operation item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the item for window operation.

Troubleshooting

The window regulator stops working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism may be overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window does not operate after the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected.

› Activate window operation ***» page 36, Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery***.

Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery

Automatic window operation activation

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Push up the respective button and the window closes.
3. Release the button.
4. Push up the button up again and hold it for 1 second.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof.

If you activate the control in the closing direction and an obstacle hinders the closing, the sliding of the glass stops and the glass moves back a few centimetres.

If the obstruction is not removed and you try again to close the sliding/tilting roof by sliding and holding your finger in the closing direction, the anti-clamping protection will not work (if the interval between attempts is less than 5 seconds). The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the sliding/tilting roof has a force limiter, it should be closed carefully.

ⓘ NOTICE

› During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.

› Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery.

› When using a roof rack, close the sliding/tilting roof.

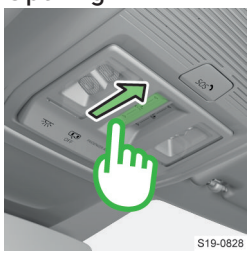
Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation

Opening



› Slide with your finger backwards.

Closing



› Slide with your finger forward.

Stop/resume the window movement

1. To **stop** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, press.
2. To **resume** the movement of the sliding/tilting roof, move your finger in the required direction.

Opening/closing the sliding/tilting roof

› Tap .

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Convenience operation of the sliding/tilting roof

The convenience operation allows you to tilt or close the sliding/tilting roof with the key.

› To **tilt**, hold down the button .
› To **close**, hold down the button .

In a vehicle with keyless locking system, you can close the sliding/tilting roof using the sensor in the front door handle.

› To **close**, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle » *page 32*.

Closing the sliding/tilting roof is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

All windows are operated at the same time as the sliding/tilting roof.

Sun visors – with electrical operation

Operation

Opening



› Slide with your finger backwards.

Closing



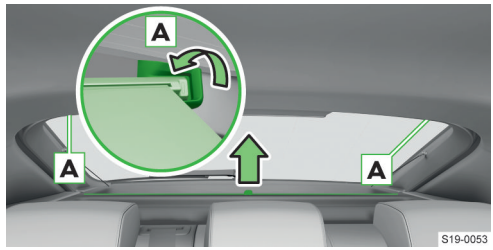
› Slide with your finger forward.

Stop/resume the sunshade movement

1. To **stop** the movement of the sunshade, press .
2. To **resume** the movement of the sunshade, move your finger in the required direction.

Sunblind for the rear window

Operation



Brightness protection

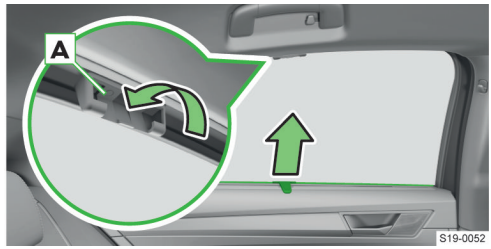
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holders at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation



Brightness protection

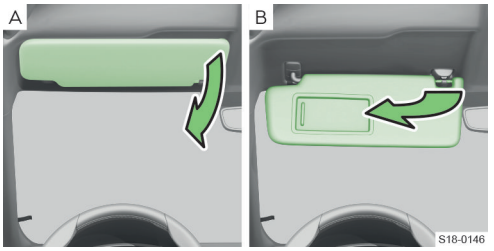
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and down



A Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen.

B Swivel the front visor towards the door.

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.

› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

Operation

Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, press the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

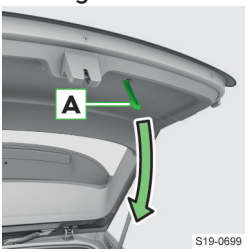
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Setting a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The lid's automatic locking delay can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.

› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not close the lid manually while the lid is moving.

› Before operating the lid, check that there are no obstructions in the opening and closing area that

could damage the lid. Also check that there are no objects in the immediate area of the of the vehicle that could damage the interior of the vehicle and the items being transported.

› If the lid hits an obstacle while opening, it will stop and an audible signal will sound.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

Operation

The lid handle



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

The button in the lid



› Press the button to open, close or stop the lid movement.

The button in the door



1. To open the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid starts to open.
2. To close the lid, pull and hold the button until the lid is fully closed.
3. Pull or release the button to stop the lid from moving.

The button on the key



› Hold the button to open or close the lid, or to stop its movement.

Closing applies only to vehicles with keyless locking system. The key must not be in the car and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the lid.

ⓘ The lid can also be closed by briefly pulling the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Settings

Setting and storing the top position of the lid

It is advisable to adjust the top position of the lid, e.g. if the space for opening is limited by the height of the garage.

1. Stop the lid in the desired position.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Restoring the lid to its default upper position

1. Carefully manually raise the lid all the way up.
2. Hold down the button on the bottom edge of the lid until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 40.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

ⓘ When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

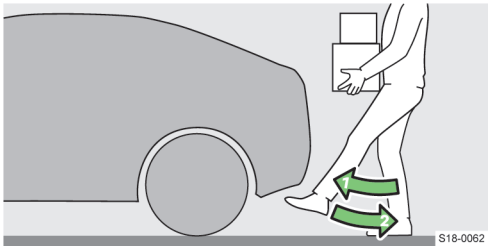
Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
- ✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



1. Stand behind the centre of the rear bumper.
2. Swing your foot smoothly under the bumper and back.

If the bonnet does not move, wait a few seconds and repeat the motion.

Lid opening/closing signal

The rear indicator lights will illuminate when the lid is being opened and closed. In addition, an audible signal sounds when the lid is being closed.

Stop/resume lid movement

You can stop the lid movement by smoothly swinging your foot. The lid movement is resumed by a subsequent swing of your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- Downpour
- Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activation/deactivation

- Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing* > *"Easy Open"*

Or:

MENU > > > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *"Easy Open"* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the *"Easy Open"* item.

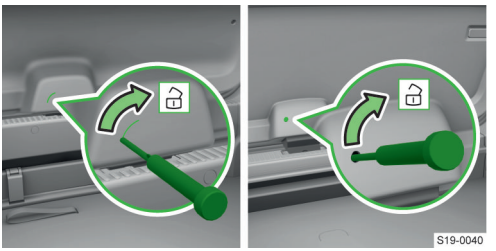
It is recommended to deactivate the feature in the following cases:

- Installing the roof rack
- Connecting a trailer or other accessories to the towing bracket
- Washing the vehicle
- Maintenance and repairs to the rear of the vehicle

Releasing the boot lid

Releasing

If the boot lid does not open, it can be released manually using the following procedure.



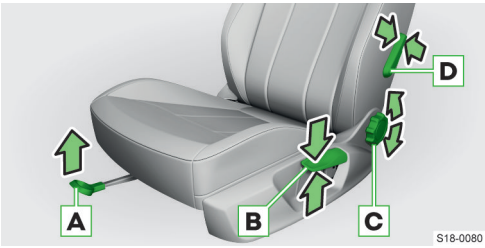
1. Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
2. Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirrors

Front seat – with manual operation

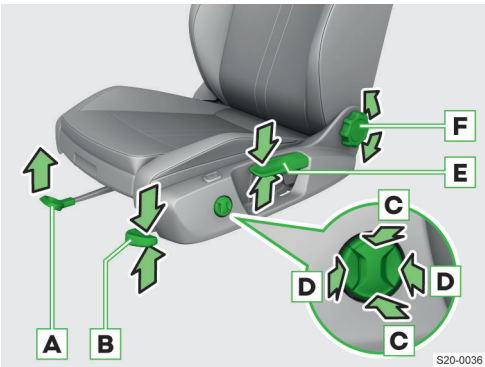
Seat controls

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.



Option 1

- **A** Adjust in longitudinal direction
  The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.
- **B** Adjust the height
- **C** Adjust the backrest angle
  Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.
- **D** Adjusting the lumbar support: degree of curvature



Option 2

- **A** Adjust in longitudinal direction
  The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.
- **B** Adjusting the seat tilt
- **C** Adjusting the lumbar support: position of curvature
- **D** Adjusting the lumbar support: degree of curvature
- **E** Adjust the height
- **F** Adjust the backrest angle
  Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Manual seat length adjustment

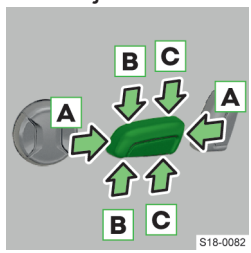


1. Press the release handle.
2. Slide the front of the seat forwards or backwards.

Front seat – with electrical operation

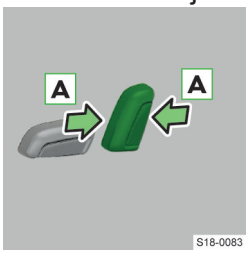
Seat controls

Seat adjustment



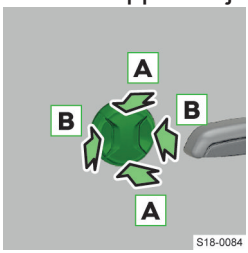
- **A** Adjust in longitudinal direction
- **B** Tilt adjustment
- **C** Adjust the height

The backrest adjustment



A Tilt adjustment

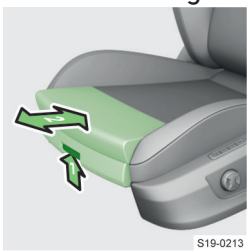
Lumbar support adjustment



A Curvature adjustment

B The degree of curvature adjustment

Manual seat length adjustment



1. Press the release handle.
2. Slide the front of the seat forwards or backwards.

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle can have a convenience entry function.

When the driver's door is opened, the seat moves into a position that enables easy entry.

The seat moves back to the saved position as soon as the door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

The seat moves to a position that allows easy exit as soon as the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.

› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

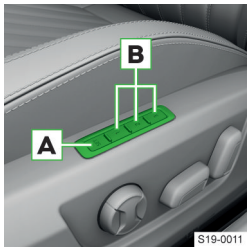
Or:

› Press the button on the key.

› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Saving the position of the driver's seat and the wing mirrors for forward movement



1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Adjust the seat and the wing mirrors.
3. Press the A button and within 10 seconds press one of the memory buttons B.

Saving is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Saving the position of the passenger's seat

Position of the passenger's seat can be saved in the same way as the driver's seat position.

Saving the position of wing mirror on the passenger's side for reversing

Applies to Swing Infotainment system.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Mirrors and wipers*.
3. Activate the fol.ding wing mirrors function.
4. Switch the wing mirror control to **R** position.
5. Engage reverse gear.
6. Set the mirror to the desired position.

7. Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is stored in memory.

Saving the position of wing mirror on the passenger's side for reversing

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
4. Select the *Mirrors* item and activate the folding wing mirror function.
5. Switch the wing mirror control to **R** position.
6. Engage reverse gear.
7. Set the mirror to the desired position.
8. Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is stored in memory.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Driver's seat – convenience entry function

The function is activated on the Infotainment system display in the following menu:

CAR > > *Interior* > *Seats*

Or:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Seats*

Seat massage function

Turn on/turn off



Version 1



Version 2

› Press the button.

Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

› Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

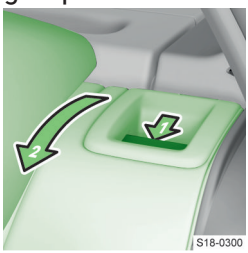
Rear seats

Folding down the backrests

Before folding down

1. Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
2. Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded-down backrests.
3. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

Folding the backrests from the passenger space



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

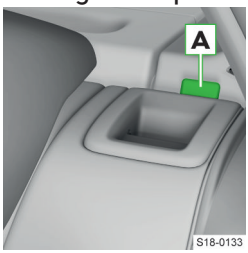
Folding the backrests from the luggage space



› Pull on the handle.

The backrest is released and partially folded down.

Folding back up



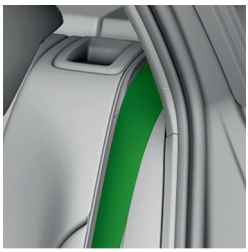
1. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
2. Fold the seat backrest back up.

   The release handle should click audibly into place.
3. Check that the backrest is locked in place. The A pin must not be visible.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



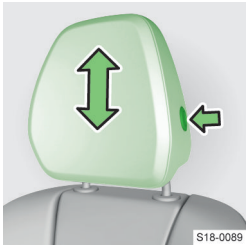
Rear seat belt parking position



Headrests

Adjusting the headrests

Front headrests



› Hold the locking button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests

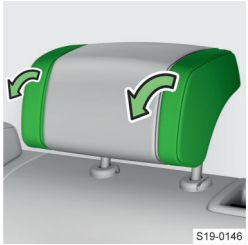


› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing it down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding head restraint parts at the rear

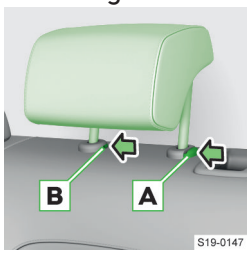
The folded side parts restrict the free movement of the head sideways, e.g. when sleeping.



1. Adjust the head restraint to the first extended position.
2. Fold down the side parts of the head restraint.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



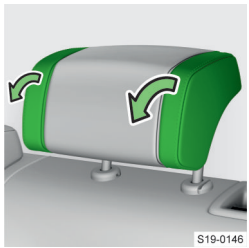
1. Partially fold the respective backrest forwards.
2. Move the headrest up to the stop.
3. Press simultaneously the A and B the locking buttons and remove the headrest.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

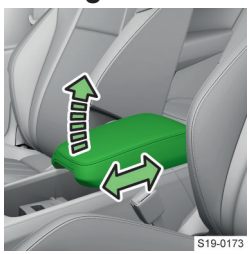
Sleep package



The package includes folding side bolsters for the headrest and a bag with a blanket.

Front armrest

Settings



Height adjustment:

› Lift the armrest into one of the locking positions

Folding down:

› Lift the armrest above the highest locking position and fold it down.

Adjustment in longitudinal direction:

› Move the armrest to the desired position.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!

› The front armrest must be folded down or raised to one of the locked positions when driving.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Load-through device

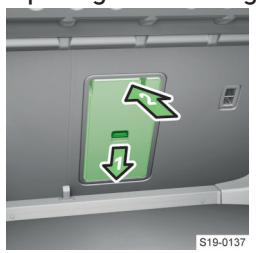
Opening and closing

Opening from the passenger space



1. Press the top of the lid.
2. Pull on the release handle.
3. Lower the lid.

Opening from the luggage compartment



1. Press the safety catch.
2. Lower the lid.

Closing

› Close the lid from the passenger compartment until it clicks audibly.

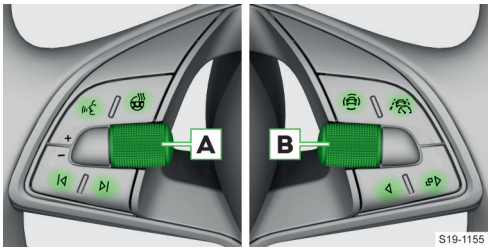
When closed, the red mark on the rear of the lid must not be visible above the safety catch.

⚠ WARNING

› Use the opening in the backrest only for transporting skis in the secured bag.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel



- Switching voice control on/off
- Steering wheel heating » page 75
- A **Turning** – adjusting the volume
  Pressing – switching the sound on/off
- Switch to the next track/station played
- Switch to the previous track/station played
- Displaying the assist systems menu
- Switching between Travel Assist and ACC » page 180

The B, and buttons are used to control the instrument cluster:

› Analog instrument cluster » page 76
› Virtual cockpit » page 77

Setting the steering wheel position

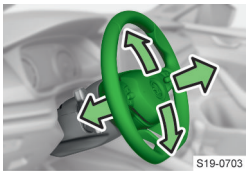
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Pull the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering fault

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminates – partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, you may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock fault

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Once the ignition has been switched off, it is no longer possible to switch on ignition, lock the steering or switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not active

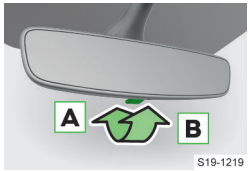
flashing
Message indicating the required steering wheel movement

1. Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
2. If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interior mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror not darkened
B Mirror darkened

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled by the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

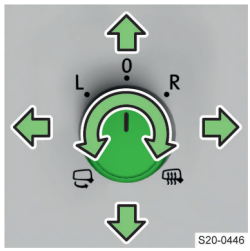
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the control



L Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switching off operation
R Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror
Folding the mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different control position)
Heating the mirrors with the engine running

Adjusting the mirror surface

1. Select the position **L** or **R**.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

The vehicle is not necessarily locked when the mirrors fold in. Vehicle locking is indicated by flashing turn signal lights.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by pressing with your hand.

Synchronous mirror glass adjustment

If this function is activated when the driver's mirror glass is being adjusted, the passenger's mirror glass will also be adjusted.

Mirrors with memory

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

You can store the current setting of the exterior mirror glass in the driver's seat memory » page 42.

Folding the passenger's mirror glass when reversing

Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

For better visibility when reversing, the passenger's mirror will fold down to the position stored in the driver's seat memory » page 42.

Operating conditions:
- ✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The mirror position is stored in memory.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The mirror control is in **R** position.

The mirror automatically returns to the default setting when the vehicle is driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance of vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of mirror damage!
› If the electrically foldable mirror is accidentally knocked out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible click.

Settings

Automatic folding of wing mirrors, synchronized setting of mirror glass and folding the passenger mirror when reversing can be activated or deactivated in the following way:

1. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Mirrors* menu from the Infotainment system.
2. Activate or deactivate.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Mirrors* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Mirrors* and activate or deactivate the feature.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the electric mirror glass control

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of getting burned!

› Do not touch the heated exterior mirror glass.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Use

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt if it is pulled suddenly. The belts lock, for example, during sudden braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled suddenly, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Belt tensioners on the front and rear seat belt retractors increase the safety of the **belted up** driver, the front passenger and the rear seat passengers wearing their seat belts.

During a collision of certain force, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner to prevent unwanted body movement.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of overturning, **light** collision or accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioners

Vehicles with Proactive Passenger Protection are equipped with reversible belt tensioners .

Reversible belt tensioners increase the safety of the belted driver and passenger by automatically pulling the seat belt towards the body and then releasing it in critical driving situations.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

The display may vary, depending on its type:

illuminates or flashes – unfastened seat belt at the front or rear

Illuminated – unoccupied rear seat

flashes – rear seat belt not fastened

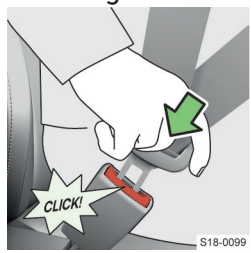
illuminated – a rear seat belt not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt fastened

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



1. Hold the lock tongue and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
2. Insert the lock tongue into the buckle until there is an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to ensure that the lock tongue is securely fastened.

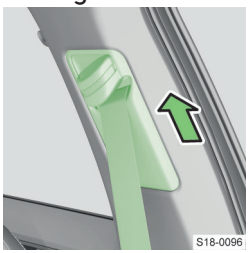
Unfastening the seat belt



1. Hold the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
2. Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

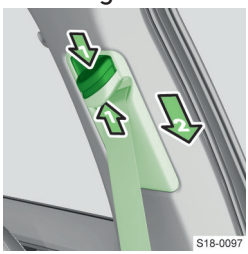
Settings

Raising



› Slide the turning loop up.

Lowering



1. Press the lock.
2. Slide the turning loop down.
3. After adjustment, check that the belt turning loop is properly secured and that the belt locks securely by pulling sharply on the belt.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



1. Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
2. Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
3. Pull on the strap to check if the retractor is working properly.
4. If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
5. If the strap is still blocked, seek help from a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

⚠ WARNING

› When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.

› Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.

› If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.

› When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.

› If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

› When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.

› For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat in the front passenger seat

When using a child seat in the passenger seat, all country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

› Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, which is protected by an active airbag in front of the child.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



Ⓐ Sticker on the front passenger's sun visor

Ⓑ Sticker on the centre pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat in the front passenger seat:

› When using a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag » page 56.

› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and another child seat that may be placed behind it.

› Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

› Position the front passenger seat belt as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the child being transported!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.

› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› Activate the front passenger airbag when you are no longer using a rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat.

Applies to Taiwan.

In accordance with the legal regulations, toddlers, infants and children are not allowed to sit in the front seat. This is indicated by the following sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in Škoda vehicles, are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the Škoda website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2–3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by weight groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 44 regulation.

Category	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9–18 kg
2	15–25 kg
3	22–36 kg

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX system

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag [b]
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	IL
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	IL

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Rear seats	
		Outer seats [b]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IL	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

"IL" The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

"IUF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats permitted for use in this weight category.

"X" The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system eyelets.

i-Size

Passenger seat		Rear seats	
With activated front air-bag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

“i-UF” The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“i-U”The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“X” The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Category	Passenger seat	
	With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U [a)]
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U [a)]
1 (9–18 kg)	UF	U
2 (15–25 kg)	UF	U
3 (22–36 kg)	UF	U
[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.		

Category	Rear seats	
	Outer seats	Centre seat [a)]
0 (up to 10 kg)	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	U	U
[a)] It is not permitted to install a child car seat with a support leg on the rear centre seat.		

“U” The seat is suitable for child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight group.

“UF” The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal” category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

“X” The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter » page 50, What you should be mindful of.

ISOFIX

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

ⓘ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a Škoda Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.



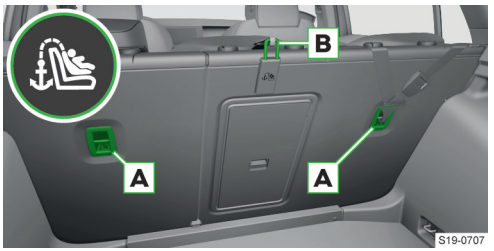
› Remove the protective caps before fitting the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.
› Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.
› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.



Mounting eyelets on the rear seats



Mounting eyelets on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER belt mounting eyelets are located on outer rear seats A, or also on the middle rear seat B or the passenger seat.

Airbags

Use

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection to the seat belts during severe frontal and side collisions.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. It only provides protection when combined with a seat belt and only in this way does it provide maximum protection.

What you should be mindful of

The airbag system can only perform its protective function if all occupants are belted and properly seated.

In some situations, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated » page 56, Operation.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!
› Maintain the correct seating position.
› Do not place your limbs in the airbag deployment area.
› No persons, animals or objects such as » page 55 cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the front airbags!
› Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. This can prevent the front airbags from deploying.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the side airbags!
› Do not exert excessive force, e.g. impacts, on the backrests.
› Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by Škoda.
› Any damage to seat covers at the side airbag location must be repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends using seat covers from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of restricting the function of the central airbag!

› The front armrest must be folded down or raised to one of the locked positions when driving.

Functionality

The inflated airbag absorbs the forward movement of the body reducing the risk of injury.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the airbags inflate. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

The airbags **will not deploy** in the following situations:

› Minor frontal and side collisions
› Rear-end collision
› Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

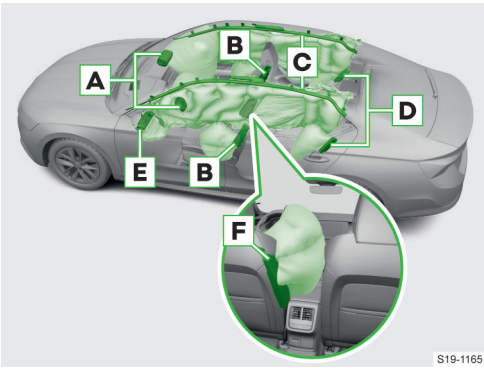
Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

If the airbags are deployed in an accident, the whole vehicle will be unlocked at the same time. Depending on the extent of the damage, you can lock the vehicle after an accident as follows:

1. Open the driver's door and close it again.
2. Lock the vehicle.

Airbag overview

The location of airbags is marked **AIRBAG**.



A Front airbags
B Side airbags – front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags – rear
E Driver's knee airbag
F Central airbag between the driver's seat and the passenger seat

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on to activate the airbags.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag *» page 56, Operation* should be deactivated by a Škoda Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

› With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.
› Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.
› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on, and then flashes for 12 seconds – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer!

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

illuminated
Message indicating an airbag fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Passenger front airbag switch

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

› A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.

› The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of malfunction in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

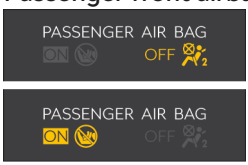
⚠ WARNING

Risk of unexpected activation of the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident!

› After deactivating the passenger airbag with the key part, do not leave the key part inserted in the switch while driving. Shocks may cause the key part to rotate in the notch and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Passenger front airbag status indication



Indicator light in the overhead panel

› When the ignition is switched on, both indicator lights will illuminate briefly.

› If the system is OK, they will both go out.

› One of the following indicator lights will then come on depending on the position of the switch:

OFF illuminated – passenger front airbag is deactivated

ON illuminates 65 seconds after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag is activated

Operation

Before switching the passenger airbag off/on

› Remove the key part.

Switching passenger front airbag on/off



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the passenger door.
3. Insert the key part upwards into the notch in the switch.
4. To **switch off**, carefully turn the switch to the **OFF** position.
5. To **switch on**, carefully turn the switch to the **ON** position.
6. Remove the key part from the notch.
7. Close the passenger door.
8. Switch on the ignition and check that the passenger's front airbag indicator lights are illuminated.

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

ON flashes together with OFF
The passenger front airbag does not deploy in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, lights are functional when the ignition is switched on.

When the lights are not switched on

The need to switch on the lights is indicated by illuminating of the ☼ indicator light in the instrument cluster.

☼ illuminated

› Turn on the lights.

Operation

Light modes



The switch ☼ can be used to select the light mode.

ⓘ The range of available light modes varies according to the ambient light conditions and vehicle operation (standing/driving).

ⓘ Information on the selected mode is briefly displayed on the instrument cluster display.

› Press the ☼ switch repeatedly to select the desired mode.

AUTO – Automatic mode

› Switching parking lights and low beam on/off automatically » page 58.

› Switching daytime running lights on/off automatically » page 58.

AUTO Illuminates in the light switch. f the low beam is also switched on automatically, ≡D illuminates in the light switch.

≡D – Parking lights mode

≡D illuminates in the light switch.

– Low beam mode

≡D illuminates in the light switch.

OFF – Lights off

No green indicator light illuminates in the light switch.

ⓘ When the ignition is switched on, the **AUTO** mode is automatically set.

ⓘ The parking lights can only be switched on and off when the vehicle is stationary or moving at a speed up to 10 km/h up to the distance of 100 m. If either value is exceeded, the driving lights are automatically switched on.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

1. Select the **CAR** > > *Exterior* > *Headlights* menu from the Infotainment system.
2. Select the item for setting the headlight range.
3. Use the slider to adjust the range of the lights. The range must correspond to the load of the car.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights*.
4. Select the item for setting the headlight range.
5. Use the slider to adjust the range of the lights. The range must correspond to the load of the car.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

Depending on the load of the vehicle, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can also be used.

Headlight range control

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Adaptive headlight set the light range automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can result in poor road lighting or can dazzle other road users.
› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Setting the headlights for right/left-hand traffic

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Headlights* menu from the Infotainment system.
2. Set the feature *Travel mode:*.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > 🚗 > 🚙 > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Headlights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Headlights* and set the feature *Travel mode:*.

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Defective LED light source or light bulb

illuminates together with ⚠
Information appears on the display indicating a lighting fault.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message indicating a driving lights failure appears, the light will work in emergency mode.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Daytime running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

ⓘ For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Automatic activation / deactivation

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Automatic activation of lights

Functionality

Switching lights on automatically in low light

The daytime running lights are automatically switched on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions and vehicle operation (parking/driving).

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Automatic activation of lights is indicated by illuminating the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching lights on/off automatically in low light

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers have been switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic driving lights function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

1. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Driving lights* menu.
2. Set the required features.

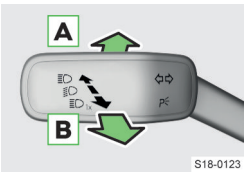
Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Driving lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Driving lights* item and set the required functions.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam headlights work when the headlights are switched on.



A Switching on high beam

B Switching off high beam/ switching on headlight flasher

When the high beams or the headlight flasher is on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

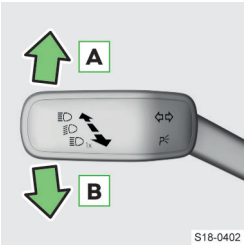
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Right turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

B Left turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

Turn signal – convenience signalling

Convenience signalling causes the turn signal lights to flash three times without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

1. Select the **CAR** > > *Exterior* > *Driving lights* menu from the Infotainment system.
2. Activate or deactivate the *Convenience turn signal* feature.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Driving lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Driving lights* item and activate or deactivate the *Convenience turn signal* feature.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster – right turn signal light defective

› Check the right signal light

flashes faster – left turn signal light defective

› Check the left signal light

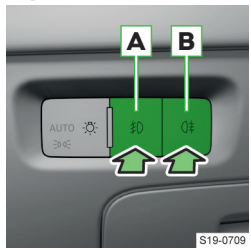
Trailer turn signal light fault

does not blink when trailer is connected – trailer indicator turn signal fault

› Check the trailer lighting.

Fog lights

Operation



Fog lights switch:

A Front fog lights – when switched on, the indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates

B Rear fog light – when switched on, the indicator light in instrument cluster illuminates

› To switch on the fog light, press the relevant button.

The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the ⚠ button in the middle of the dashboard to switch them on/off.

The hazard warning lights may switch on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically during start-up or acceleration.

Switch on the hazard warning lights e.g. in the following situations:

› When traffic slows down suddenly or when you reach the end of a traffic queue.
› When the vehicle is stationary in traffic
› When towing

When the hazard warning system is active and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights function

Use

Double parking light

The double parking light function switches on the sidelights when the vehicle is parked.

Single parking light

The single parking light function switches on the sidelights on one side when the vehicle is parked.

Operation

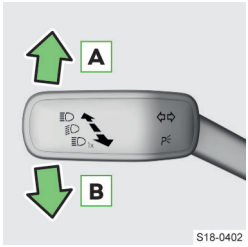
Double parking light

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Select the lights mode .
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The lights may switch off automatically if the 12V vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12V vehicle battery may discharge.

Single parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right.
B Switch on the sidelights on the left.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever to the appropriate position.
3. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The Corner function

Functionality

The Corner function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the area in front of the vehicle depending on the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply.
✓ Low beam is switched on.
✓ There is reduced visibility in the vicinity of the vehicle.
✓ The front fog lights are not switched on.
✓ The driving speed is below 40 km/h.

Adaptive functions of the headlights

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The adaptive headlight function ensures that the light path is optimised to suit the current driving situation.

Operating conditions

✓ Engine running
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode

Settings

Adaptive Headlights feature activation/deactivation

1. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Driving lights* menu from the Infotainment system.
2. Activate or: deactivate the *Adaptive Headlights* feature.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Driving lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Driving lights* item and activate/deactivate the *Adaptive Headlights* feature.

The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions

Functionality

The Coming Home function turns on the light after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door opened. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The Leaving Home function switches on the light when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.

Settings

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Comfort lights* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Comfort lights* item and set the functions.

When the engine is switched off, a menu appears on the Infotainment system screen where the Coming Home feature can be activated/deactivated.

High beam Light Assist assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

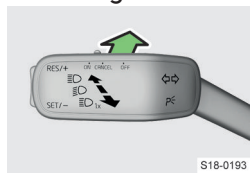
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** mode.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.
- ✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.
› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Driving lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Driving lights* item and activate/deactivate the *Light Assist* feature.

Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist

Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

When driving on the motorway at night, it blinds the light cone on the side of the dividing strip, so that the drivers in the vehicles coming from the opposite side are not blinded. These vehicles may not be recognized by the assistant, because their headlights may be covered by the dividing strip.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

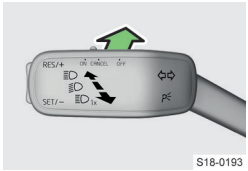
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is located in mode **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

The system function can be restricted in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Exterior* menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the screen with the *Driving lights* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Driving lights* item and activate/deactivate the *Dynamic Light Assist* feature.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked

› One of the doors is open

› Switching ignition off

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked

› The ignition is switched on

› About 45 seconds after all the doors have been closed

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Lighting operation

Front and rear lights on/off

OFF Deactivating automatic switch-on (OFF lights up yellow when deactivated)

The individual lights can be switched on/off by touching the respective light.

You can adjust the intensity of the light by holding your finger on it. The set intensity is not stored in the memory when the light is switched off.

Switching on the make-up mirror illumination in the windscreen sun visors

› Slide off the make-up mirror cover.

Settings

Backlighting of the switches and instruments

The intensity of backlighting of switches and instruments can be set in one of the following ways:



1. Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

   A window will open with a slider for setting the backlight intensity.
2. Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Or:

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Interior* menu.
2. Select the screen with the item for interior lighting by swiping with your finger sideways.
3. Select the item for interior lighting and use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Backlighting of the Infotainment display and the central console illumination

Applies to vehicles without background lighting.

You can set the following functions in the Infotainment system:

› Set the colour of the Infotainment display backlight:

  › Automatically, based on the selected driving mode.

› Manually, using the slider

› The intensity of the central console illumination

1. Select the **MENU** > > > *Interior* menu.
2. Select the screen with the item for background lighting by swiping with your finger sideways.
3. Select the item for background lighting and set the required function.

Interior background lighting

Use

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

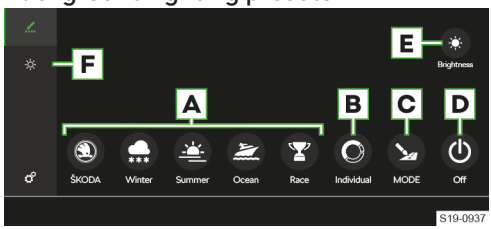
The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

When the vehicle is locked, the lights will briefly turn red. When the vehicle is unlocked, the illumination will briefly turn green. When certain doors are opened, the illumination in these doors will turn red to indicate that the door is open.

Settings

You can set the background lighting in the Infotainment system menu **MENU** > .

Background lighting presets



A Factory presets
› You can only set the overall lighting intensity.

B User preset
› Set the lighting colour for the dashboard and door area together and the footwell independently.
› Set the lighting intensity independently for the dashboard area, centre console area, door area and footwell area.

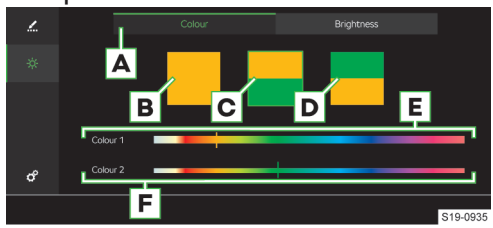
C Automatic preset
› The colour and brightness of the lighting automatically change depending on the selected travel mode of the car.

D Switching off the lighting

E Adjusting the overall lighting intensity

F Setting the colours and intensity of the lighting for the user preset

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset



A Tab for setting the lighting colours

B Selection for uniform lighting colour
› Use the **E** slider to set the colour.

C Option for two-colour lighting
› Use the **E** slider to set the colour for the dashboard and door area.
› Set the colour for the footwell using the **F** slider.

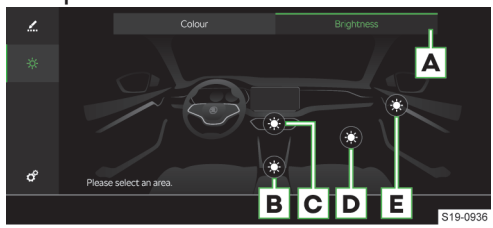
D Option for two-colour lighting
› The colour for the dashboard and door area will be interchanged with the colour for the footwell.

E Slider for setting the lighting colours

F Slider for setting the lighting colours

1. Select the user preset.
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting colours.
3. Choose whether you want a uniform lighting colour or a different colour for the dashboard and door area and a different colour for the footwell.
4. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting colour.

Setting the colours of the lighting for the user preset



A The tab for setting the lighting intensity.

B Setting the lighting intensity for the central column area.

C Setting the lighting intensity for the dashboard area.

D Setting the lighting intensity for the footwell.

E Setting the lighting intensity for the door area.

1. Select the user preset.
2. Select the tab for setting the lighting intensity.
3. Select the area, for which you want to set the lighting intensity.
4. Use the sliders to set the desired lighting intensity.

Wipers and washers

Operating conditions

- ✓ Bonnet closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed
- ✓ Ignition on

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

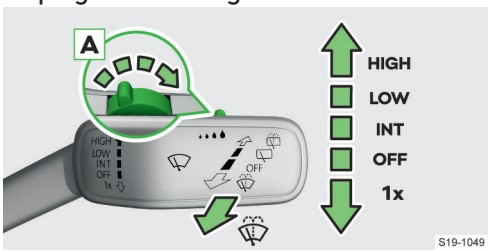
› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen!

› Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry.

Wiping and washing the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending on vehicle equipment:
- › Intermittent wiping
- › Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the **INT** position

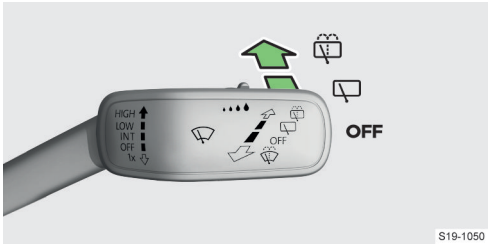
Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles can be automatically heated.

Headlamps washers

The illuminated headlamps are washed the first time and every tenth time the windscreen is washed. You can have the frequency of the headlight washes adjusted by a specialist garage.

Wiping and washing the rear window



Sprung position
- › Washing and wiping the glass
- › Washing the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping function

If the windscreen wipers wipe continuously, the rear wiper will automatically wipe at regular intervals.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

You can activate or deactivate the automatic rear wiper and automatic rain wiper functions in the Infotainment system as follows:

1. Select the **CAR** > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Wipers* menu.

   Or:

   MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Exterior*
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers*.
4. Activate or deactivate the functions.

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the climatic conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the washer

› Do not remove the strainer from the neck of the tank when refilling the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights

› Use a fluid that does not harm polycarbonate.

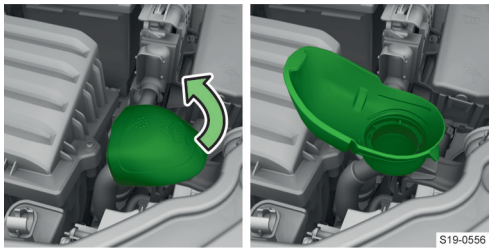
NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine compartment components

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is in the engine compartment » page 16.

The tank capacity is 3 litres, in cars with headlight washers it is 4.7 litres.



Funnel cap of the reservoir

1. Open the engine compartment lid » page 193.
2. Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
3. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
4. Close the tank sealing cap.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid too low

illuminates together with ⚠

Or:

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully detach frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and remove any snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

In order to fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen, it must first be set into the service position.

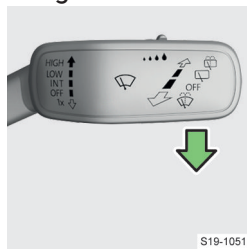
NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

› Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Setting the wipers to the service position using the control lever



1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. Push the control lever down within 10 seconds, and hold it for approximately 2 seconds.

Setting the wipers to the service position using the Infotainment system

1. Select the **CAR** › ⚙ › *Exterior* › *Wipers* menu.
2. Select the wiper service position

Or:

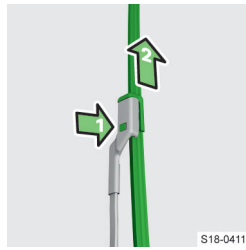
1. Select the **MENU** › 🚗 › 🚗 › *Exterior* menu.
2. Select the screen with *Wipers* by swiping with your finger.
3. Select *Wipers* and then wiper service position.

Replacing a wiper blade

CAUTION

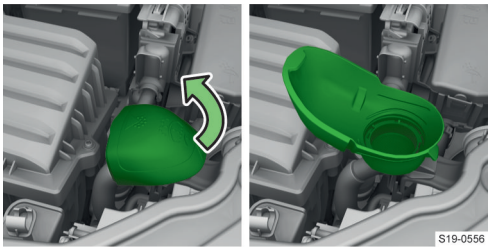
Risk of an accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.



1. Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
2. Press the safety catch and remove the wiper blade.
3. Insert the new wiper blade in until it clicks into place.
4. Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
5. Switch on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



Heating and air conditioning

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

› When cooling the interior, it is recommended to keep the interior temperature no more than 5 °C lower than the outside temperature.
› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› It is recommended to have the air conditioner disinfected once a year.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
✓ Running engine
✓ Fan switched on

ⓘ The indicator light in the button **A/C** can light up even if not all conditions for switching on the cooling system are met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Operation

Air conditioning control menu

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Press **A/C** in the status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:

Displaying of the air conditioning settings
Other air conditioning settings

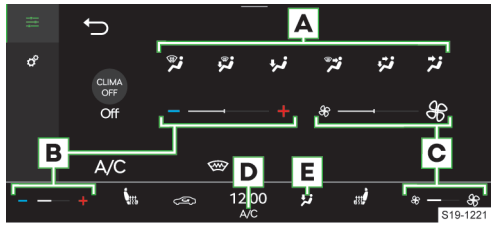
Settings

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Press **A/C** on the Infotainment system status bar > on the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



A Setting the direction of the air outlet
B Setting the temperature
C Setting the fan speed
D Selecting the menu and switching on air conditioning
E Overview of the currently selected air distribution system
CLIMA OFF Switching the air conditioning on/off
A/C Switching the cooling system on/off
Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation
Switching the seat heating on/off » page 74, Operation
Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

Other settings

› Tap the function button on the Infotainment system display for further settings.
› *Automatic auxiliary heating* – switching rapid interior heating on/off

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Automatic activation of the cooling system

Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. It turns on when the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The air distribution setting **is** in the position.

In this case, air recirculation is switched off.

Or:

- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The air distribution setting **is not** in the position.
- ✓ Recirculated air mode is on.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculated air mode can increase the cooling effect.

Recirculated air mode is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met::

- ✓ The cooling is on.
- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The temperature control is set to the minimum temperature.
- ✓ The air distribution setting is not in the position.

🛈 During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› When cooling the interior, it is recommended to keep the interior temperature no more than 5 °C lower than the outside temperature.
› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Functionality

Smart and classic air conditioning

Smart air conditioning is an automatic mode with preset selection options.

The classic air conditioning system enables the individual functions to be set.

Automatic mode

Automatic mode keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

🛈 After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Air Care

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Activate* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.

Air Care

Applies to Infotainment Bolero and Columbus.

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

The function is started/switched off by tapping on the function surface ≈ › *Air Care* in the operating menu of the air conditioning system.

When the Air Care function surface turns green, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

When the Air Care function surface turns white, this indicates that the function has been switched on. *Air Care* is displayed in the status bar.

ⓘ After the function is switched off, the function surface *Air Care* lights up green for a certain time.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

- ✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
- ✓ Running engine
- ✓ Fan switched on

Operation

Air conditioning control menu

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Press the **CLIMA** button for the currently selected air conditioning functions in the lower status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:

- Smart air conditioning display with presets
- Display of the classic air conditioning settings
- Air Care
- Other air conditioning settings

ⓘ When switched on, the air conditioning will start as set before switching off.

Settings

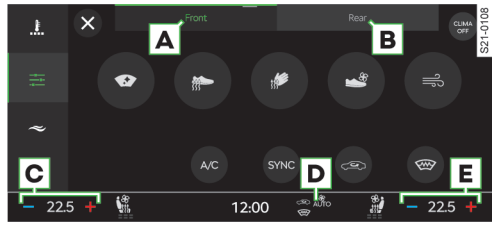
Setting up smart air conditioning for Swing Infotainment system

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment › on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Press the D button for the currently selected air conditioning functions in the lower status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



- A Displaying the settings on the front
- B Rear settings display
- C Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- D Displaying the menu and an overview of currently selected functions
- E Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- CLIMA OFF Switching the air conditioning system on/off
- Windscreen defogging preset
- Warm air flow to footwell preset
- Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating
- Cold air flow to the footwell preset
- Outdoor air flow to interior preset
- **A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- **SYNC** Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation
- Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » page 74, Operation

Setting up smart air conditioning for Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment › on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Tap **CLIMA** in the lower status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



- **A** Displaying the settings on the front
- **B** Rear settings display
- **C** Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- **D** Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- Information on smart air conditioning
- **CLIMA OFF** Switching the air conditioning on/off
- Windscreen defogging preset
- Warm air flow to footwell preset
- Warm air flow to hand zone and turning on steering wheel heating
- Cold air flow to the footwell preset
- Outdoor air flow to interior preset
- **A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- **SYNC** Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation
- Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » page 74, Operation

To start the preselect option, certain conditions must be met due to the condition of the vehicle. These conditions can neither be influenced nor detected.

Switching off the preset also switches off the steering wheel heating. This applies even if the steering wheel heater was manually switched on before the preset was activated.

The selected preset is switched on for a limited period of time.

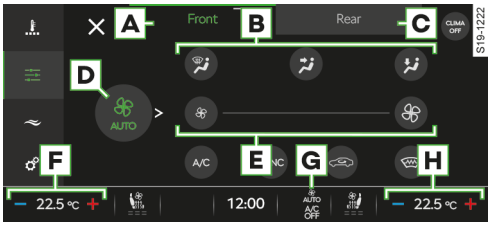
Setting up classic air conditioning for Swing Infotainment system

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Press the **G** button for the currently selected air conditioning functions in the lower status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



- **A** Displaying the settings on the front
- **B** Setting the direction of the air outlet
- **C** Rear settings display
- **D** Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power
- **E** Setting the fan speed
- **F** Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- **G** Displaying the menu and an overview of currently selected functions
- **H** Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- **CLIMA OFF** Switching the air conditioning system on/off
- **A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- **SYNC** Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation
- Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » page 74, Operation

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment display:

- **LO** Maximum cooling power
- **HI** Maximum heating power

Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the display at the back of the centre console.

Other settings for air conditioning in Swing Infotainment system

› Tap the button in the air conditioning control menu.

The following menu will appear:

› *Automatic recirculation* – switching the automatic air recirculation on/off

Included depending on vehicle equipment:

› *Automatic auxiliary heating* – switching rapid interior heating on/off

› *Automatic windscreen heating* – switching automatic windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Settings

Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Automatic switching on of seat heating and ventilation

If this function is activated, the heating/ventilation will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

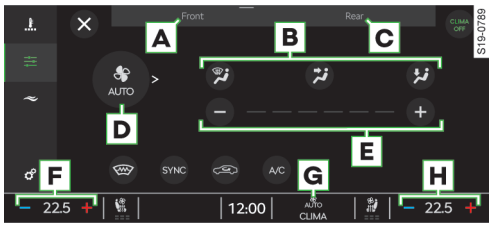
Setting up classic air conditioning for Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems

› Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > ☰ on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Tap **CLIMA** in the lower status bar of the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



- **A** Displaying the settings on the front
- **B** Setting the direction of the air outlet
- **C** Rear settings display
- **D** Switching on the automatic mode and setting its operating power
- **E** Setting the fan speed
- **F** Temperature setting for the left-hand side
- **G** Displaying the menu and an overview of currently selected functions
- **H** Temperature setting for the right-hand side
- **CLIMA OFF** Switching the cooling air conditioning system on/off
- Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Operation
- **SYNC** Switching maintaining the interior temperature on/off based on the driver's temperature setting
- Switching the recirculated air mode on/off
- **A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- Switching the seat heating/ventilation on/off » page 74, Operation
- **REAR** Locking the rear seat heating intensity increase and rear temperature setting » page 74, Settings

The function is displayed when you press the **C** button.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment display:

- **LO** Maximum cooling power
- **HI** Maximum heating power

ⓘ Temperature settings at the back can also be made on the display at the back of the centre console.

Setting the temperature on the touch panel below the Infotainment system – the driver's side

› Adjust the temperature on the driver's side by swiping two fingers on the touch panel.

Setting the temperature on the touch panel below the Infotainment system – the passenger's side

1. Tap the touch bar twice with two fingers.
2. Move two fingers to adjust the temperature.

Other air conditioning settings for Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems

› Tap the ⚙ button in the air conditioning control menu.

The following menu will appear:

› *Automatic recirculation* – switching the automatic air recirculation on/off

Included depending on vehicle equipment:

› *Automatic auxiliary heating* – switching rapid interior heating on/off

› *Automatic windscreen heating* – switching automatic windscreen heating on/off » page 74, Settings

Activating/deactivating the following functions (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Automatic switching on of seat heating and ventilation

› Automatic switching on of the steering wheel heating

If this function is activated, the heating/ventilation will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on, depending on the temperature of the seats or steering wheel and the temperature inside and outside the vehicle.

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Video – automatic air conditioning system Climatronic

Climatronic automatic air conditioning – settings
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octa-via4-3zone-air-conditioning

Auxiliary heating and ventilation

Usage

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of poisoning!

› The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of fire!

› Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.

› The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

Functionality

The interior is heated or ventilated based on the temperature set in the independent heating menu.

The system uses fuel from the fuel tank for heating.

Operating conditions

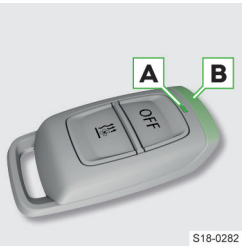
✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

✓ Sufficient fuel supply, in the instrument cluster is not illuminated.

Operation

Switching on/off by remote control

› Hold the corresponding button.



A Indicator light
B Antenna
OFF Switching off
Switching on

Hold the remote control with the antenna facing up.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect the remote control against moisture, strong shocks and direct sunlight.

Indication of the indicator light on the remote control

› Illuminates 2 seconds in green – switching on

› Illuminates 2 seconds in red – switching off

Remote control range

The range of the remote control with a charged battery is up to several hundred metres. The range may be limited for example by obstacles or weather conditions.

Switching on/off in the Infotainment system

› Tap **MENU** > > .

Setting the operation time

1. Tap **MENU** > > > .
2. Set the departure time.

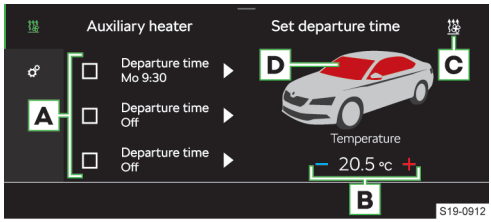
Indication of the indicator light in the instrument cluster

When the independent auxiliary heating is turned on, will illuminate.

Setting automatic activation

› Press **MENU** > on the Infotainment system display.

The following menu will appear:



A Preset list, preset activation/deactivation, setting a preset

B Setting the temperature

C Immediate activation

D Red windows symbolize the heater is on
Blue windows symbolize the ventilation is on

Setting the operating time at immediate activation

Only one of the presets can be activated at a time. An activated preset is deactivated after automatic start-up. To start another preset, it must first be activated.

When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on at the next set time.

Independent auxiliary heating can also be set in MyŠkoda » *page 150* application.

Troubleshooting

Smoke in the engine compartment

Smoke and odours can form in the engine compartment when the independent heater is in operation. This is not a fault.

Operation of the independent heater after it is switched off

After switching off, the independent heater remains running briefly to burn off any residual fuel in the heater. This is not a fault.

Indicator light in the remote control

- Flashes slowly in green – no signal received for switching on
- Flashes slowly in red – no signal received for switching off
- Flashes irregularly green – independent heater blocked e.g. due to fuel shortage or a fault

1. Check the fuel quantity.
2. If the fuel quantity is OK, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

- Lights first orange, then green/red – low battery, on/off signal received
- Lights first orange, then flashes green/red – low battery, no on/off signal received
- Flashes orange – battery almost dead, no on/off signal received
- Does not light up – low battery, no on/off signal received
- Replace the battery.

Replacing the battery in the remote control

⚠ WARNING

Danger to life!
If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.

- Always keep children away from the remote control and the battery.
- If the battery is swallowed, seek medical assistance immediately.

Opening the flap



1. Release the cover at the marked point with a thin flat-head screwdriver.
2. Fold the cover off and slide it out.

Replacing the battery



1. Release the cover at the marked point with a screwdriver.
2. Replace the battery.
3. Replace the cover and press it down until it clicks audibly.

Environment

- Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
- Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the remote control in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Windows heating

Use

Window heating is used to defrost or defog the glass.

Conditions

✓ Engine running

✓ Outside temperature is below approx. 35 °C

Operation

Rear window heating

› Press the REAR button under the Infotainment system.

Windscreen heating

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press / > *At the front* > button on the Infotainment system display.

Or:

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press the > button on the Infotainment system display.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after a certain period.

If the heating is on and the engine is switched off and back on again within about 10 minutes, heating continues.

The windscreen defogging/defrosting mode

› Press the MAX button under the Infotainment system.

Settings

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heater will automatically switch on if there is a risk of the windscreen fogging up.

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.
2. Select the item for automatic windscreen heating

Troubleshooting

The indicator light on or below the button flashes

Heating is not operational as the charge level of the 12V vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  › The seat is not occupied.
  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

Depending on vehicle, the front seats can be heated, or heated and ventilated. Rear outer seats can only be heated.

Variant without the seat ventilation

› To heat the front seats, press or on the Infotainment system display.

› To heat the rear seats, press the button, or on the rear centre console.

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

The heating intensity is indicated by the number of indicator lights in the button or on the Infotainment system display.

Variant with the seat ventilation

1. To heat the front seats, press or on the Infotainment system display.

   The menu for the front seat ventilation and heating control will be displayed.
2. Adjust the intensity.

› To heat the rear seats, press the button, or on the rear centre console.

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

Intensity indicator in the button

--- Heating on
--- Ventilation on

Settings

Blocking the increase in rear seat heating intensity

Applies to Swing Infotainment system.

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press > *At the back* > *Rear control lock* on the Infotainment system display.

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

1. Press the CLIMA button under the Infotainment system.
2. Press > *At the back* > REAR on the Infotainment system display.

If the function is switched on, the heating intensity can only be reduced.

The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

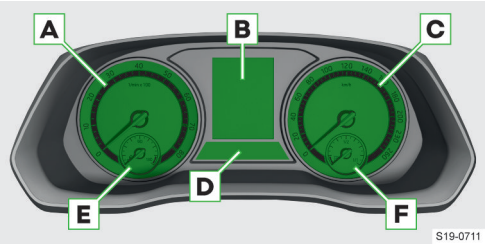
The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off or switched on at the level of the heating output that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Analog instrument cluster with MaxiDot display

Overview



- **A** Tachometer with indicator lights
- **B** Display
- **C** Speedometer with indicator lights
- **D** Bar with indicator lights
- **E** Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Coolant temperature gauge
  - › CNG fuel gauge
- **F** Fuel gauge

⚠ NOTICE

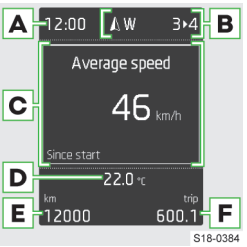
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- › **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**
- › If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

1 In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

MaxiDot display overview

Display shows the following information, based on the vehicle's equipment:



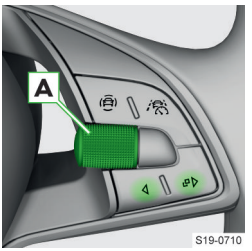
- **A** Time
- **B** Selected gear / Gear recommendation
  Included depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Compass direction display
  - › Automatic gearbox selector lever positions
  - › Recognized traffic signs
- **C** Menu, indicator lights and information
- **D** Outside temperature
  ❄ – low outside temperature
- **E** Total distance travelled
- **F** trip – distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main MaxiDot menu items on the display

- › Driving data *» page 79, Overview*
- › Assist systems – activate/deactivate assist systems
- › Navigation – displays e.g. navigation instructions, compass, list of destinations
- › Audio – using radio and media
- › Phone – call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- › Vehicle – vehicle status *» page 80, Display*

Operation

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



- **A** **Rotating** – switching between menu items/setting values
  Pressing – confirming the menu item
  ◁ **Pressing** – displaying the main menu / moving in the main menu
  ▷ **Pressing** – displaying the main menu / moving in the main menu

Settings

Setting the language

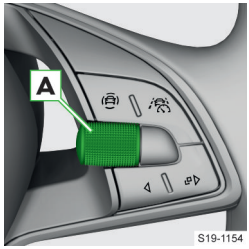
You can set the language in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster

› Select *Trip* from the menu on the instrument cluster display.



A **Rotating** – selecting data
Pressing – confirming the data
Holding – resetting the odometer

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the following menu of the Infotainment system:

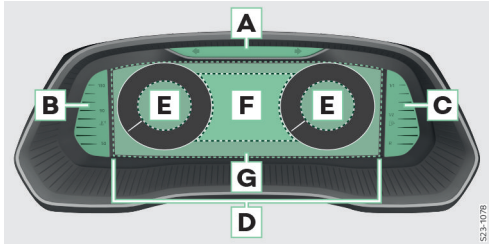
CAR > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*

Or:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*

Virtual cockpit

Overview



A Bar with indicator lights
B Coolant temperature gauge
C Fuel gauge
D Display
E Display area with selected information:
› Engine oil temperature indicator
› Coolant temperature gauge
› Navigation
› Driving data
› Compass direction display
› Distance travelled
› Audio information
F Central screen area with selected information:
› Speed
› Driving data
› Map
› Driver assist systems
G Display area with selected information:
› The gear engaged (depending on the vehicle equipment)
› Automatic gearbox mode set (depending on vehicle equipment)
› Time
› Indicator lights
› Assist systems information
› Outside temperature
❄ – low outside temperature

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**
› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

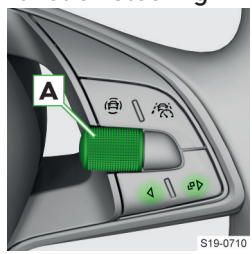
NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.
› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Operation

Overview of buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



A **Rotating** – switching between menu items / setting values / manual map rescaling
Pressing – confirming the menu item
Rotating and pressing – enabling

automatic map rescaling

◁ Switching the display variant / displaying submenu items on the left-hand side of the display

▷ Switching the display variant / displaying submenu items on the right-hand side of the display

Showing a menu of selected information on the display

› Tap the A button to display the menu on the right-hand side of the display.

› To display the menu on the left-hand side of the display, press the A dial **twice**.

› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

› To confirm the information item selection, press the A dial.

Some information items contain a submenu.

› To display the submenu, press ▷ or ◁.

› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

ⓘ The option of switching between information items is indicated by arrows and is only possible for a short period of time.

Settings

Setting the language

You can set the language in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the following menu of the Infotainment system:

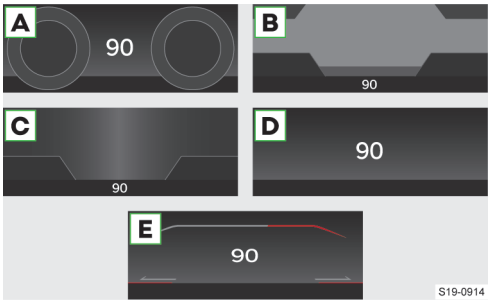
CAR > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*

Or:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Interior lighting*

Selecting a display variant

› Press the ▷ button repeatedly, or ◁ on the multifunction steering wheel to select one of the following display variants.



A Classic

B Navigation

C Driver assist systems

D Basic

E Sport (depending on vehicle equipment)

Video - Virtual cockpit

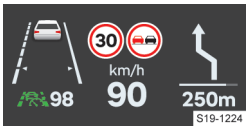
Virtual cockpit - operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-virtual-cockpit

Head-Up display

Functionality

The Head-up display projects the selected information onto the windscreen in the driver's field of vision.



ⓘ The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

Restriction

The function may, for example, be restricted or unavailable due to strong sunlight.

ⓘ Sunglasses with polarisation filters can negatively affect the visual perception of the display.

Settings

› Select the following menu:

CAR > > *Interior* > *Head-up display*

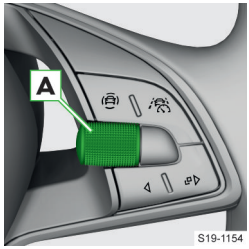
Or:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Head-up display*

The following items can be set up in the menu displayed:

› Activation/deactivation
› Position
› Brightness
› Colour scheme
› Selecting the projected information

ⓘ The position can also be adjusted by rotating the A control wheel on the multifunction steering wheel.



Driving data

Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

ⓘ For natural gas vehicles, the display of the instrument cluster shows the natural gas quality in percent from 70% to 100%. The higher the value, the lower the consumption of natural gas.

In Infotainment

The following information is displayed in the Infotainment:

- Distance travelled
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption
- Range

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start
› Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term
› The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

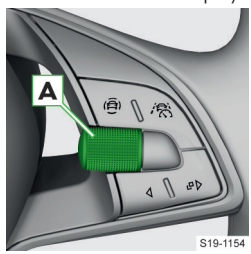
Since refuel
› Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Displaying driving data on the instrument cluster display

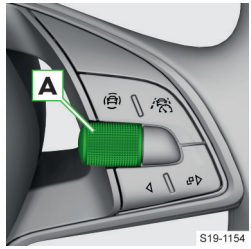
Applies to analog instrument cluster with MaxiDot display

› Select driving data from the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



A **Turning** – selecting data / setting values
Pressing – confirming data

Applies to virtual cockpit



› Tap the A button to display the menu on the right-hand side of the display.
› To display the menu on the left-hand side of the display, press the A dial **twice**.
› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

Displaying driving data in the Infotainment system

Driving data can be displayed in the following Infotainment system menu:

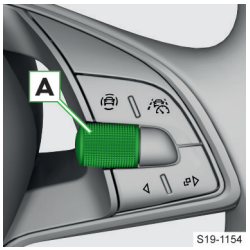
CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

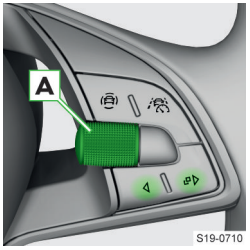
Selecting and resetting the driving data on the instrument cluster display

Applies to analog instrument cluster with MaxiDot display



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press the A control wheel repeatedly.
› To **reset** the memory, hold the A control wheel.

Applies to virtual cockpit



› To **select** the memory for the driving data displayed on the right, press ⇳▷. Rotate the A dial to select and press to confirm the relevant memory.
› To **select** the memory for the driving data displayed on the left, press ◁⇳. Rotate the A dial to select and press to confirm the relevant memory.
› To **reset** the memory for the driving data displayed, press ⇳▷ or ◁⇳. Rotate the A dial to select and press to confirm resetting the relevant memory.

Selecting the Infotainment system memory

To select the memory, press the relevant tab on the Infotainment system screen in the following menu:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

Resetting the Infotainment system memory

The memory can be reset in the Infotainment system in the following way:

CAR > > *Interior* > *Instrument cluster*

Or:

MENU > > > *Interior* > *Instrument cluster*

Or:

MENU > > > **0.0**

Settings

Setting units

You can set the units on the Infotainment system menu **MENU** > .

Vehicle status

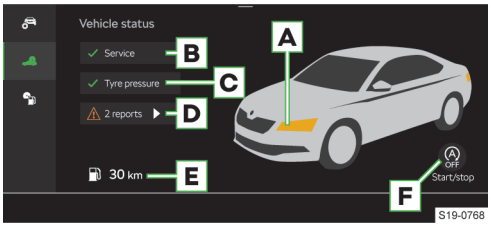
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >



A The colour-coded vehicle parts highlight the relevant warning messages
B Service dates and vehicle identification number (VIN)
C Tyre pressure check
D Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number
E Range
F Deactivating/activating the START-STOP system

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages indicating the fault are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Fault messages can also be displayed in the Infotainment system.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (serious hazard) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

Button SET

Overview

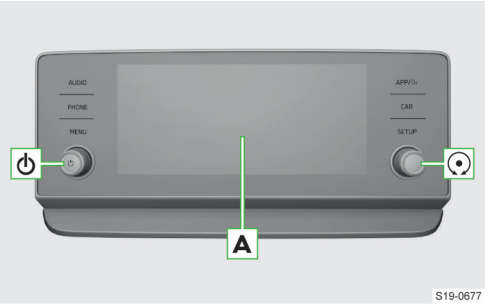
The SET button provides quick access to the following vehicle system settings (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Switching off START-STOP » page 161, Use
› Switching off the ASR traction control » page 171, Overview
› Switching on the ESC Sport stabilization system » page 171, Overview

- Interior monitoring **» page 33, Settings**
- Tyre pressure monitoring assistant **» page 216, Functionality**
- Access to selection and settings of driving assistance systems
- Access to other vehicle settings

Swing Infotainment system

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

Control dial left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Set volume

Control dial right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

AUDIO **Radio** and **Media** menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

MENU All menus

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Tap:** Display menu
- **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

SETUP Infotainment settings

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

To **display** the available Infotainment system settings, proceed as follows:

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Or:

› Tap on **SETUP**.

The following basic functions can be set:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

› Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
› Speed-dependent volume
› Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation
› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display**, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙.
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check for a successful factory reset, make sure all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Or:

› Tap **SETUP** > *System information*.

System update

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

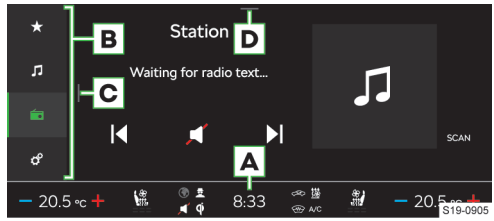
Or:

1. Press **SETUP** > *System information* > *Update software*.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Display

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display/close the submenu window

D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

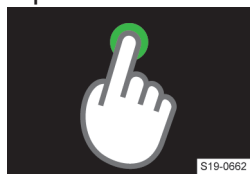
Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

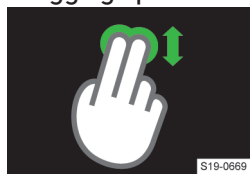
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



› Select function or menu item

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly look through the lists

Press and hold



› Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **SETUP** > *Screen*:

› Image of the screen background
› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation tones

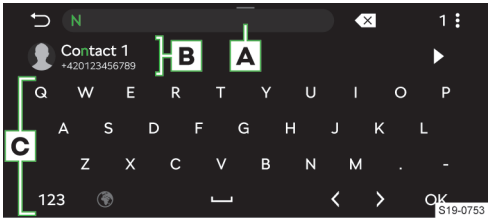
Infotainment keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



Keypad example

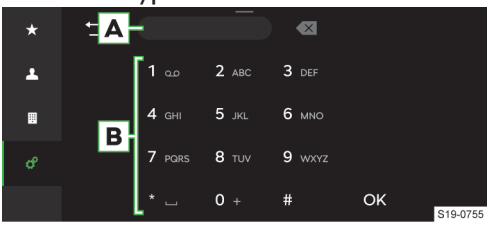
A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence

⋮ Show list of searched entries

B Entries searched for
› ▶ Show details of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
› ⬆ Switch to lowercase/uppercase
› **ABC/AБB** Switch to the language keypad
› **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
› / **Flag** Show additional keypad languages
› ␣ Insert a space
› < / > Move cursor to the left/to the right
› OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

› To tap **Display searched entries** ⋮.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

You can display further character variants by holding down the symbol.

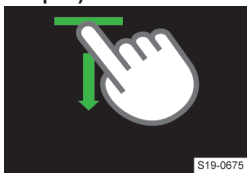
Setting additional keypad languages

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.
2. Select the desired language.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

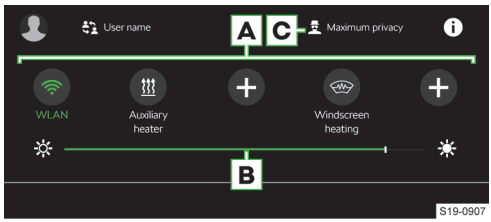
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions

B Setting the instrument and key illumination

C Setting the personal data protection level

Display user account management

Settings

Set functional surfaces of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the + icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.

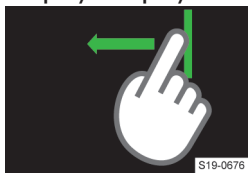
› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

Radio

Overview

Display the player

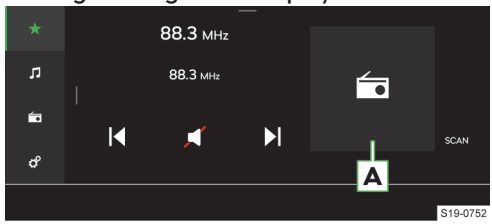


1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

Close player

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analog and digital radio player



A Station logo

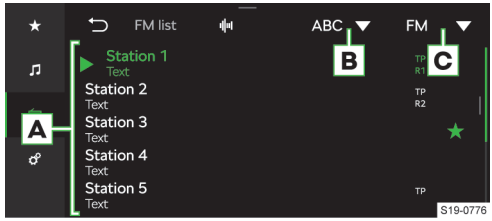
⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The method of switching depends on the setting of the ⚙ > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.

🔇 Switching the sound on/off

SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

List of available analog and digital radio stations

1. To **display**, tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.
2. Select the desired frequency range.



A List of available stations

⮌ Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

TP The station broadcasts traffic information

Manual update of the AM and DAB stations list

B Selecting the order of stations in the list by alphabet, station group name or genre

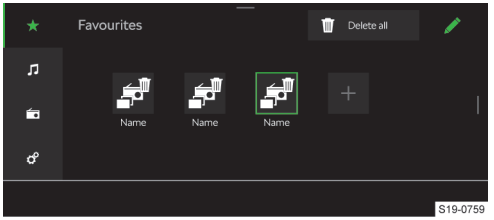
C Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

The station list can display information about the program type and the type of the regional station.

Presets for preferred stations

You can store stations from all available frequency ranges in your favourites.

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > ★.



+ Storing the currently playing station

Switching the edit mode on/off

› *Delete all* – deleting all desired stations

› – deleting a desired station

› – changing station logo

The position of the stored station presets can be changed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired preset, until it is released.
3. Move the preset to a different position.

Operation

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start playback**, tap in the displayed player the **Radio** menu, or SCAN press the right rotary control .

› To **end playback**, tap in the displayed player the **Radio** SCAN menu, or the right rotary control .

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› In the list of available FM or AM stations, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ > + in the **Radio** menu.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. To **display the list of stations** in the **Radio** menu, tap .
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or tap the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

› To **delete** a station from the **Radio** menu, tap ★ > .

› To delete **one** preset, tap .

› To delete **all** presets, tap and confirm.

/ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

To **To set the mode of switching stations in the radio player** using the / buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Radio* > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

Switching receiving traffic program (TP) on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.

2. Tap *Radio* > *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

When the function is activated and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the Infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Tuned station display on the instrument cluster

1. Select the menu showing the travel time and distance travelled.
2. Hold the ⏯ button on the multi-function steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

   When the button is released, the menu is displayed.
3. Select the item *Track change info* from the menu.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *RDS Regional:*.
3. Select one of the following menu items:
   › *Fixed* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
   › *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

ⓘ If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Switching radio text reception on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Radiotext*.

Adding station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system offers the option to assign logos from images on an external source to the station presets.

For station logos, images in the jpg, gif, png, bmp formats with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

› Tap ⚙ > *Radio* > *Radio stations logos* in the**Radio** menu.

Or:

1. Tap ✎ > 🖿 the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

Or:

1. To **import logo** from an external source, tap *Download my logo*.
2. Select the external source with the logo.
3. Find the desired logo and confirm.

ⓘ To turn off the logo display, tap 📻 in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Automatic station logo assignment*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Station region logo:*.

Switching the program type display on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be sorted based on this information.

Switching DAB stations additional announcements on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather forecast, sports reports, financial news, etc.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Other DAB reports*.

Switching automatic program tracking for DAB stations on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is activated and the DAB station is lost, the Infotainment system automatically switches to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *DAB - following DAB program*.

Switching automatic tuning from a DAB station to the same FM station

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically switches to the same FM station. The (FM) symbol is displayed after the station name.

When the DAB station signal is available again, the FMstation automatically switches to DAB station.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Automatic change DAB – FM*.

Switching on/off automatic retuning to a similar DAB station

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically retunes to another DAB station with a similar content.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Switching to a similar station*.

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *DAB Slideshow*.

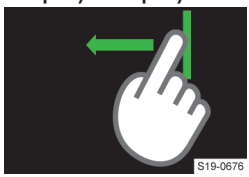
Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
- Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display the player

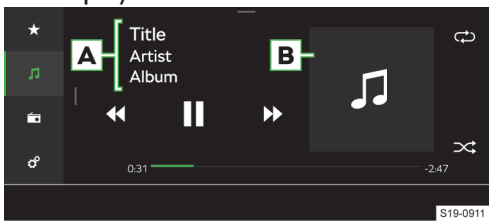


1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

Close player

- Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player



A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

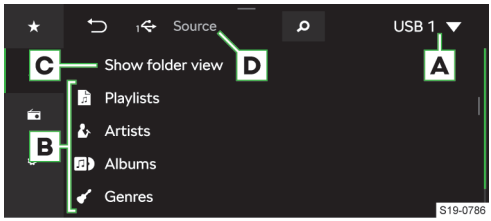
Folder and track list



A Selection of the source

B List of available folders and tracks
C Display of the multimedia database
D Name of the currently connected source
⮌ Display of available sources

Multimedia database



A Selection of the source
B Folder for the multimedia database
C Display of folder and track list
D Name of the currently connected source
Track search
⮌ Display of available sources

Player controls

Operation – basics

▷ Starting playback
▯▯ Pausing
◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track
◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning
◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track
▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track
▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

🛈 You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** receiving traffic news during playback of media files, tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Traffic program (TP)* in the **Media** menu.

Switching song playback on/off, including sub-folders

› Tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders* in the **Media** menu.

Safely disconnecting the connected USB device

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To disconnect a USB device safely, proceed as follows:

1. In the **Media** menu, tap ⚙ > *Media* > *Remove safely*.
2. Select the desired device.
3. Disconnect the USB device.

🛈 If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system	HFS+

🛈 Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player
The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices
Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
FLAC	flac
RIFF	wav
SBC	-

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile devices management

Cyber security
Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, please observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

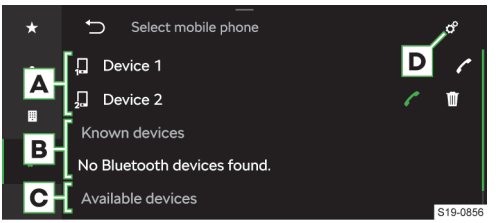
Overview
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management
› Tap on **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.

Or:

› Tap on **APP/** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap ⚙.
2. Tap *Select mobile phone*.



Phone management example

A Main and secondary phone

B List of known phones

C List of available phones

D The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system

Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

To view the trash symbol and available SmartLink connections, tap the line with the symbol and drag it to the left. If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Bluetooth® connection of a mobile device with the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find the name of the unit, go to **MENU** > > *Connect via Bluetooth* > *Enter device name*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device via Bluetooth®

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Bluetooth® connection of the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

Android Auto

- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or WLAN, as long as the mobile device supports » page 96.

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via WLAN.
2. Press **APP/** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
3. Tap the connection symbol next to the desired device.

Phone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

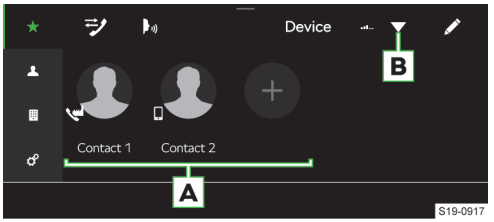
› Tap on **MENU** > .

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Preset buttons for preferred contacts

B Name of the main telephone/change telephone

Call lists

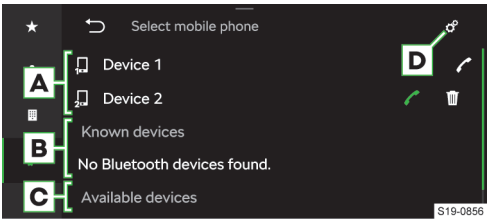
Switch on the voice control of the connected telephone, if the telephone allows this

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

› In the **Phone** menu, tap ⚙.

› Tap *Select mobile phone*.



A Main and secondary phone

B List of known phones

C List of available phones

D The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system

Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

To view the trash symbol and available SmartLink connections, tap the line with the symbol and drag it to the left. If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the phone is switched on.

The Infotainment system Bluetooth® can be switched on under **SETUP** > *Connect via Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system is switched on.

Visibility of the Infotainment system can be switched on under **SETUP** > *+Connect via Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*:

✓ The phone is within Bluetooth® signal range of the Infotainment system.

✓ The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

✓ The phone is visible for the Infotainment system.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the currently selected phone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .
› To **search** within the list, tap on .
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call
- Receiving an incoming call
- Returning to a call on hold
- Switching the ringer off
- Switching the ringer on
- Holding a call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Displaying caller details
- Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone
  The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone,** tap .
› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone - if no phone is connected.
› Additional phone - if one phone is connected.
› Select which phone to replace - if 2 phones are connected.

1. To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** in the phone menu.
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find the name of the unit, go to **MENU** > > *Connect via Bluetooth* > *Enter device name*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts

› To **display preferred contacts**, tap ★ in the **Phone** menu.
› To **save a contact**, tap +.
› Select or search for the required contact.
› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.
› To **delete a contact**, tap ★>✎ in the **Phone** menu.
  › To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap 🗑 and confirm.
  › To delete **all** preferred contacts, tap *Delete all* and confirm.

ⓘ The position of the stored presets can be changed.

1. Tap ✎.
2. Tap and hold the desired contact until it is released.
3. Move the contact to another position.

Importing telephone contacts
Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to five phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sorting contacts in the phone book
1. Tap ⚙ > *Sort by:* in the **Phone** menu.
2. Select the required sorting option.

Voice mailbox number
1. To **set the voice mailbox number**, tap in the **Phone** menu ⚙ > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality
Wi-Fi can be used for SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 4 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Connected devices*.

ⓘ If the **MENU** > ⚙ menu does not contain the item *WLAN*, the Infotainment system does not support this function.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot
1. Switch on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Hotspot WLAN*.
2. Switch on Wi-Fi in the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.

   The name of the Infotainment system can be found in **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the password.

   The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot can be found in **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Network key:*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot
The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot
The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key:*.
› Enter the password and confirm.

SmartLink

Functionality
SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

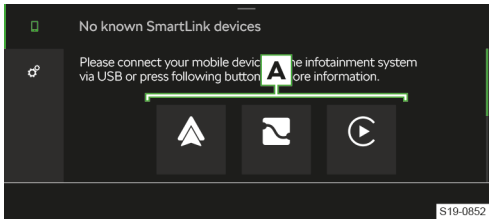
SmartLink connections overview

Display menu
› Tap **APP/**.

Or:

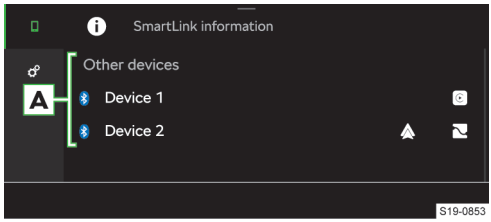
› Tap **MENU** > .

Menu for no connected devices



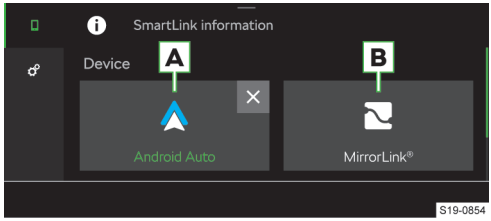
A List of supported connection types

Menu for connected devices



A List of connected devices and available connection types

Menu for a device used



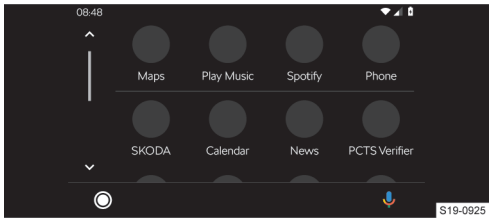
A Used connection type

B Available connection type

✕ Disconnect

Android Auto

1. Tap ▯ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of ▲ connection.

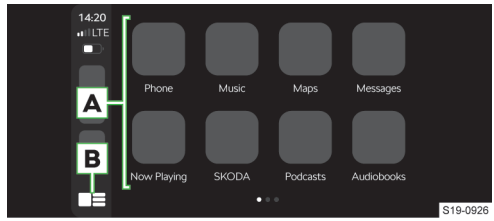


◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

🎙 Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay

1. Tap ▯ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of ◉ connection.



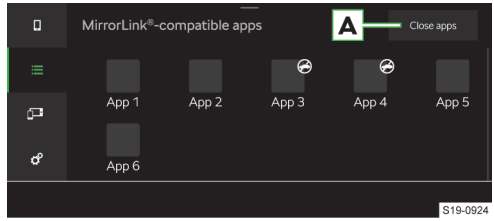
A List of available applications

B Depending on the length of operation:

- **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
- **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

MirrorLink

1. Tap ▯ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of ◪ connection.



A Displaying the running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving.

▯ Displaying the available devices

☰ List of applications

▭ Display of the last running application in connected mobile device.

⚙ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink connectivity Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connectivity, are supported in the relevant market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

✓ The Wi-Fi connection must be supported by the Infotainment system Wi-Fi function.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports MirrorLink connectivity.

  A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connectivity can be found on the Car Connectivity Consortium® website.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- ⮌ Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the ◙ symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the 🎤 button on the multi-function steering wheel.

   The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap ✕.

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. In the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ▲ symbol.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap ◉ > “Skoda” in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap ✕.

MirrorLink – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on WLAN and visibility in the mobile device.
2. Switch on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Hotspot WLAN*.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.
4. Enter the required password.
5. On some mobile devices, you need to confirm in the notification bar of the mobile device that the device is communicating with the Infotainment system.
6. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices*.
7. Select from the list of **known devices** the desired device with the symbol ◪.

MirrorLink - terminating the connection

1. Tap ▯ in MirrorLink menu.
2. Tap ✕.

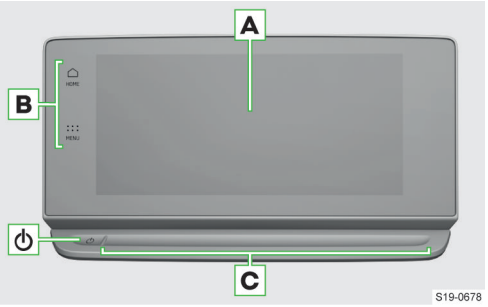
Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap ▯ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

The Infotainment system overview



A Touchscreen

B Functional buttons
- **HOME** – preferred menus
- **MENU** – all menus

C Touch bar for volume control

⏻ Depending on the status:
- **The Infotainment system off**
  - **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on
- **The Infotainment system on**
  - **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off
  - **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:
- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:
- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:
- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.
- To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
- For **manual display**, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting up the HOME menu

› To **view the next page** of the HOME menu, tap the display and drag it left or right.

Adding a preferred menu:

› To **display edit mode**, hold the finger on the display.

› Tap a vacant field with buttons.

› Select the menu with the desired dimension of the function area.

The Infotainment system only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with buttons that are currently free.

› To **close edit mode**, tap ×.

Removing a preferred menu:

› To **display edit mode**, tap and hold the finger on the display.

› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.

› To **close edit mode**, tap ×.

Adding/removing a page in the HOME menu

› To **display edit mode**, tap and hold the finger on the display.

› Tap ✎.

› To **add another page**, tap **+**.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

› To **remove a page**, tap 🗑.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

› To **return to edit mode**, tap ⮌.

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙.
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check for a successful factory reset, make sure all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Display all updates*.
2. Select the required update and follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

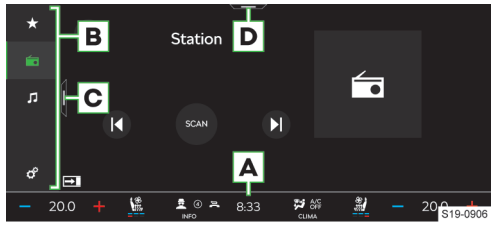
Video – the Infotainment system

The Infotainment system – individual customisation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-infotainment

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display/close the submenu window

D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

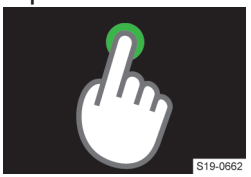
Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



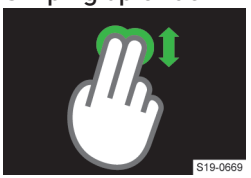
› Select function or menu item

Hold call



› Zoom into the map

Swiping up or down with two fingers



› Fast scrolling through lists
› Changing the map view 2D/3D

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



› Zoom out of the map

Turn two fingers



› Rotate the map

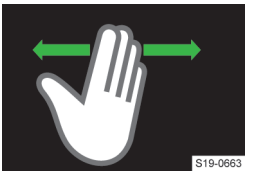
Press and hold



› Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Contactless gesture control

Some Infotainment menus can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Image of the screen background
› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



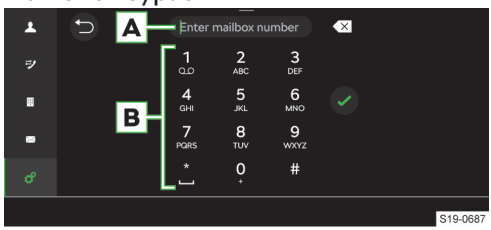
Keypad example

A Input line
- › Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- › ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - › **Tap:** delete the last entered character
  - › **Hold:** delete all entered characters in sequence
- › Delete all entered characters

B Entries searched for
- › ▼ Show list of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
- › ⬆ Change sentence case
- › **abc** Switch to the language keypad
- › **123** / **12#** Switch to the numeric/character keyboard
- › **1/2** / **2/2** Switch to other character variants
- › 🌐 Show additional keypad languages
- › 👁 Display the entered password
- › OK / ✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- › Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- › ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - › **Tap:** delete the last character
  - › **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

ⓘ If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically**when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap 🌐 on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Hold the symbol with another variant.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

1. To **set**, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.
2. Select the desired language.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Vice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

The dialogue can be interrupted at any time and a new command can be given. There is no need to wait for the response to complete.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition and control of other vehicle functions.

Online voice control can be used, for example, to search for special destinations or to dictate an SMS message if the connected phone allows it.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

Extended online voice control
Enhanced online voice control of the vehicle extends the functionality to search for navigation and special destinations online using the vehicle's current GPS position. This option will improve the relevance of search results and speed up system response.

Operating conditions
- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions
In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The vehicle supports the function.
- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Extended Voice Control – conditions
In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The voice assistant in the vehicle is granted access to the current GPS position of the vehicle.

Activation command recognition condition
- ✓ Enabled **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

Entering a voice command
› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

ⓘ You can speed up voice control as follows:

1. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.
2. Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

ⓘ If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot".

Correcting a voice command
› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control
Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control
A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Press on the Infotainment system display.
3. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Stopping a message being played
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say a new voice command.

Ending voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restrictions
Voice control is not available for some Infotainment languages. The Infotainment system will alert you to this fact.

The directional microphone only obeys the voice commands of the user who has woken up the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

The voice control cannot be used while a phone call is in progress and you can only dictate an SMS message from the driver's seat.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones

› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Giving/revoking consent to the voice assistant to access the current GPS position of the vehicle

› Press **MENU** > *Instructions* > *Speech* > *Navigation* > *Optimizing online search for destinations*.

ⓘ Consent can also be set in MyŠkoda application.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > ▮ > 🔊.

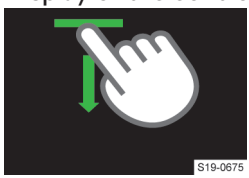
Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"Overview"**.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

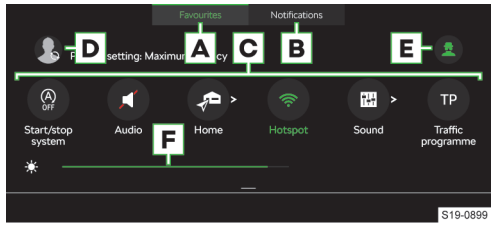
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features.

B Display list of informational messages.

C Preferred functions

D Display user account management.

E Setting the personal data protection level.

F Setting the instrument and key illumination.

Set functional surfaces of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the **+** icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

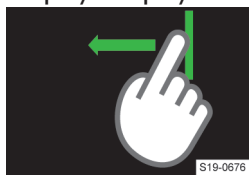
Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

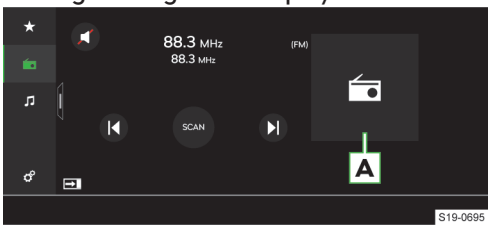
Close player

› Tap on ⮕.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analog and digital radio player



A Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

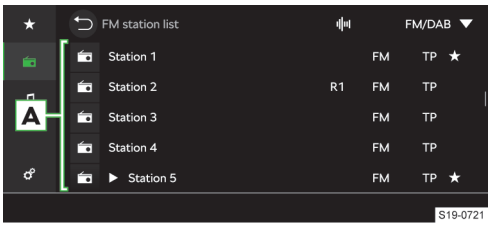
SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

🔇 Switching the sound on/off

⏏ Closing the player

List of available analog and digital radio stations

1. To **display**, tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.
2. Tap ▼.
3. Select FM/DAB or AM.



A List of available stations

⮌ Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▼ Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

TP The station broadcasts traffic information

The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.

Manual update of the station list

ⓘ The station list can display information about the program type and identification of the regional station.

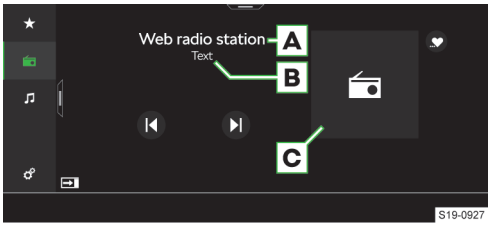
Web radio player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. To **select web station**, press in the **Radio** menu 📻▼>>*Web radio*.
2. Select the web station from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search a web radio station.



A Station name

B Broadcast content information

C Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

❤ Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

⏏ Closing the player

ⓘ If the 🚫 symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

Podcast player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. To **select podcast**, press in the **Radio** menu > ♫ > 📻 > ▼ > *Web radio*.
2. Select the podcast from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search podcasts.

ⓘ The podcasts are marked with the 🎙 symbol in the displayed lists.



A Podcast name

B Broadcast content information

C Podcast logo

▷ Starting playback

⏸ Pausing

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

⏪15 Rewind 15 seconds back

15⏩ Fast forward 15 seconds

♥ Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

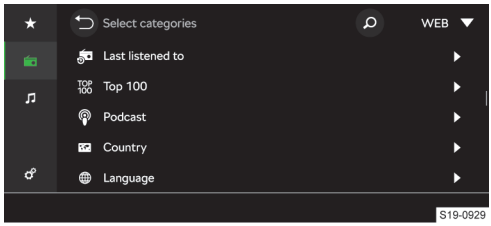
View episodes from the podcast being played

Closing the player

ⓘ If the symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› To **display the list**, in the **Radio** menu > ▼ > tap *Web radio* .



Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

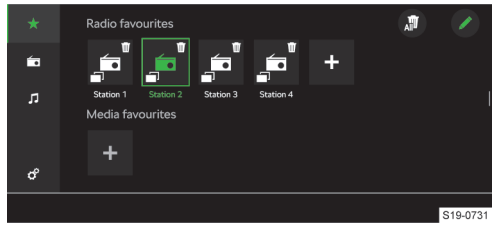
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

ⓘ The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

Preset radio stations and podcasts

You can store stations from all available frequency ranges, web radios and podcasts in the presets.

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > ★.



+ Storing the currently playing station or podcast

Switching the edit mode on/off

› – deleting all preferred station and media presets

› – deleting the desired preset

› – changing logo

ⓘ The position of the stored presets can be changed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired preset, until it is released.
3. Move the preset to a different position.

Operation

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **start playback**, tap SCAN.

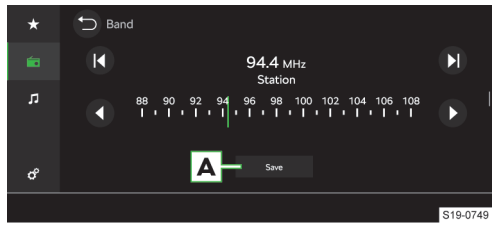
› To **stop playback**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

1. View the list of available stations.
2. Tap .

ⓘ For FM stations, the button is available, if the item **MENU** > ♫ > ⚙ > *Radio* > *Show stations:* is set. > *FM*.



⏮ / ⏭ Scroll to previous/next available station

◀ / ▶ Step-by-step search

A Saving the currently tuned station to the preferred station presets

Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.
› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. To **display the list of stations** in the **Radio** menu, tap .
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or tap the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

› To **delete** a station from the **Radio** menu, tap ★ › .
  › To delete **one** preset, tap .
  › To delete **all** presets, tap and confirm.

⏮ / ⏭ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

To **To set the mode of switching stations in the radio player** using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap › *Radio* › *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

⏮ / ⏭ Buttons for web radios and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons in **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap › *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your favourites presets or stations in the list of available stations and podcasts.

Switching receiving traffic program (TP) on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

When the function is activated and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the Infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Tuned station display on the instrument cluster

1. Select the menu showing the travel time and distance travelled.
2. Hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

   When the button is released, the menu is displayed.
3. Select the item *Track change info* from the menu.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *RDS Regional:*.
3. Select one of the following menu items:

› *Fixed* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Switching radio text reception on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Radiotext*.

Switching the function on/off Slideshow

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Press the displayed radio text in the **Radio** player.

Adding station logos

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

› Tap > *Radio* > *Radio stations logos* in the**Radio** menu.

Or:

1. Tap > the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Automatic station logo assignment*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Station region logo:*.

Switching DAB stations additional announcements on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather forecast, sports reports, financial news, etc.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *DAB supplementary reports*.

Displaying FM/DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following settings, the stations of the selected frequency band will appear in the list of available stations.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Station display:*.
3. Select one of the following menu items:
   › *FM/DAB* – available FM and DAB stations are displayed in the list.
   › *FM* – available FM stations are displayed in the list.

Switching on/off automatic retuning to a similar DAB station

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically retunes to another DAB station with a similar content.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Switching to a similar station in the event of weak signal*.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Press *Radio* > *Audio quality:*.
3. Select high or low quality.

The quality setting affects the volume of data consumed by the data link.

The quality is also affected by the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback drop-outs occur, reduce the audio quality.

Media

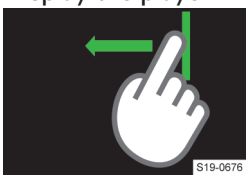
What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display the player



1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

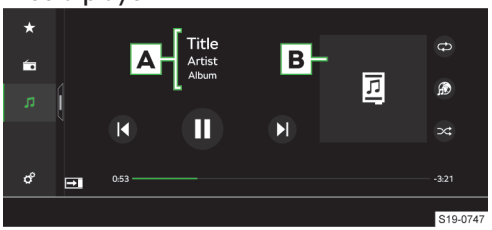
Close player

› Tap on ⇥.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player

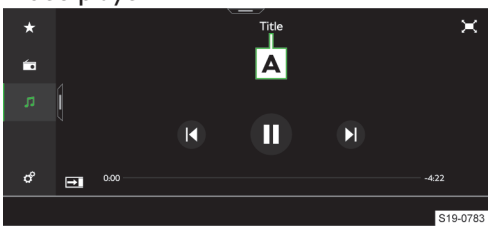


A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

⇥ Close player

Video player



A Name of the track being played

⤧ Zoom out of/in to picture display

⇥ Close player

Media list



A Select source

B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected mobile devices

⮌ Show available sources

Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Operation

Operation – basics

▷ Starting playback

▯▯ Pausing

◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track

▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

ⓘ You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

⇄ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

⇄ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

⤨ Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

› To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.
› To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.
› Tap on ⮌ until the media list for the current source is displayed.

› Tap on ▪ › ⚙.
› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

› Control playback
› Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ⇅ to the desired position.
› Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

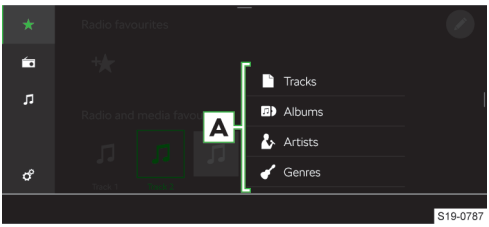
Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites

› To **save** the preferred medium, tap on **Media** ★ › + in the menu.
› Select a menu item from the following menu A.



› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.
› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.

Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** receiving traffic news during playback of media files, tap ⚙ › *Media* › *Traffic program (TP)* in the **Media** menu.

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass	
	Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

ⓘ Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	

Codec type	File extension
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, please observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

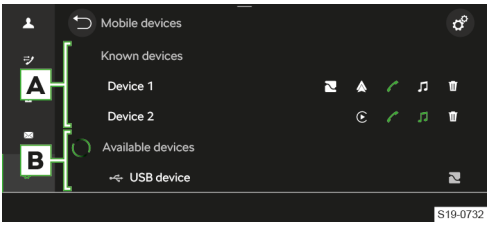
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.



A Connected/previously connected devices
B Available devices
The device enables connection via Bluetooth® "hands free" profile
The device enables connection viaBluetooth® audio profile
Removing the device from the list of **previously connected devices**
The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

- The device enables SmartLink connection via MirrorLink

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or WLAN, as long as the mobile device supports .

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via WLAN.

2. Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

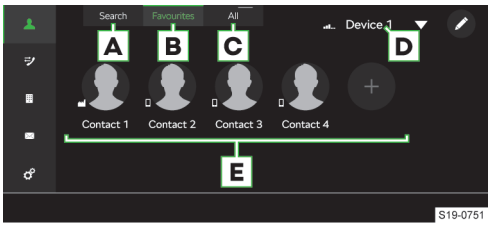
› Tap **MENU** > .

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

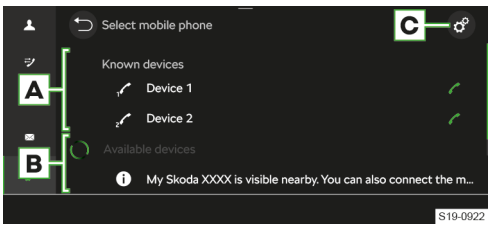
D Name of the main telephone

E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap .
2. Tap *Select mobile phone*.



A Main phone, additional phone and known devices

B List of available phones

C The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system

Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® "hands free" profile

Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

To view the trash symbol and available SmartLink connections, tap the symbol and drag it to the left.

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the phone is switched on.

Bluetooth® of the Infotainment system can be switched on under **MENU** > > *Mobile device* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system is switched on.

Visibility of the Infotainment system can be switched on under **MENU** > > *Mobile device* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The phone is within Bluetooth® signal range of the Infotainment system.

✓ The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. Tap **MENU** > > .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.
3. To **dial**, tap .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Connecting to the voice mailbox number

1. Tap **MENU** > > .
2. Tap .

If no voice mailbox number is entered, you will be prompted to enter one.

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call

Receiving an incoming call

Returning to a call on hold

Switching the ringer off

Switching the ringer on

Holding a call

Switching the microphone off

Switching the microphone on

Displaying caller details

Rejecting an incoming call by a text message

Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone.
The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone,** tap .

› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily the conference continues in the background
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Sending a text message

1. Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

   Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select *SMS*.
2. Tap .
3. Type and confirm the text message, and a preview of the message will appear.

   If you tap the text area in the message preview, the message can be edited.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the message.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

1. Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

   Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select *SMS*.
2. Tap .

Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following settings.

› To **switch on/off displaying messages as a conversation**, tap > *Display messages as conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

Depending on the context, the Infotainment system can read for you a text message using Infotainment-generated voice, if you tap .

To quickly reply to the selected message, tap and select the desired reply.

Sending an email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap > > *EMAIL* > .
2. Enter the subject of the message.
3. Write and confirm the email, and its preview will be displayed.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the email.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap on > > *EMAIL*.
2. Select the desired email.

You can select the following features in the email displayed:

- Reply to all or only to sender.
- Reply with a new email.
- Forward email.
- Manage email.

If the symbol is displayed, the email contains an attachment.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone - if no phone is connected.

› Additional phone - if one phone is connected.

› Select which phone to replace - if 2 phones are connected.

1. To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** ▼ in any menu.
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > > > *Select mobile phone*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > > > *Select mobile phone*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts

› To **display preferred contacts**, tap in the **Phone** menu.

› To **save a contact**, tap **+**.

› Select or search for the required contact.

› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

› To **delete a contact**, tap > in the **Phone** menu.

  › To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap and confirm.

  › To delete **all** preset preferred contacts, tap and confirm.

The position of the stored presets can be changed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired contact until it is released.
3. Move the contact to another position.

Voice mailbox number

1. To **set the voice mailbox number**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To **set the Infotainment system ringtone**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *HD voice quality* .

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Sorting contacts in the phone book

1. Tap > *Sort by:* in the **Phone** menu.
2. Select the required sorting option.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to five phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Switching on/off graphical notification of receiving new message/email

If the feature is activated, a new message symbol will appear in the status bar and on the message functional surface when a new message/email is received.

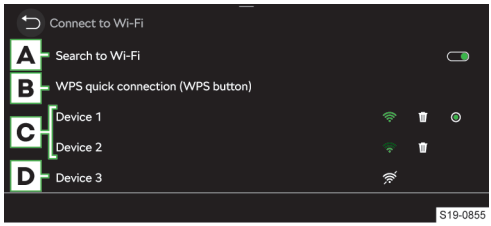
› In **Phone** menu, tap > *Notification of new messages*.

Wi-Fi

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› To **display the list**, tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Search for available visible hotspots

B Connection to the hotspot via WPS

C Previously connected hotspots

D Available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Signal strength of the hotspot

Hotspot signal is not available

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment system WLAN hotspot in **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on Wi-Fi in the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment WLAN Units under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *WLAN:* > *Searching for Wi-Fi*.
2. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available hotspots.
3. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

ⓘ The Infotainment system remembers the passwords of previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To turn data transmission with the connected device on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of the Infotainment system to a mobile device hotspot

1. Turn on the hotspot on your mobile device, its visibility, and turn on WPS connection.
2. Tap **MENU**> ⚙ > *WLAN* > *WLAN:* > *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.

Automatic WPS connection

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the WPS connection option on your mobile device.
3. Wait until the connection is established or confirm the appropriate messages.

Manual WPS connection

1. Turn on the WPS connection option on your mobile device using PIN.

   WPS PIN for establishing connection with the Infotainment system appears on your mobile device.

2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS PIN*.
3. Enter and confirm WPS PIN in the Infotainment system.
4. Wait until the connection is established or confirm the appropriate messages.

Automatic connection using a QR code

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system display with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

- Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
- Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
- For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
- If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

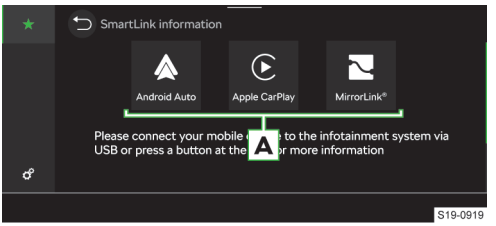
- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

SmartLink connections overview

Display menu

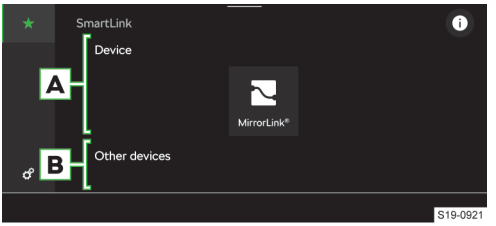
- Tap **MENU** > ▪.

Menu for device not connected



A List of supporting connection types

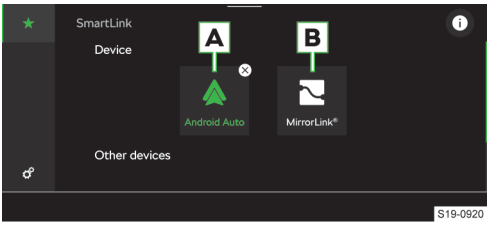
Menu for connected devices



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device used



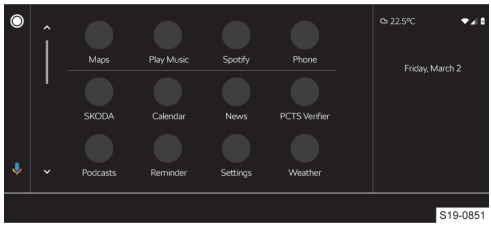
A Used connection type

B Available connection type

⊗ Disconnect

Android Auto

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of ⏃ connection.

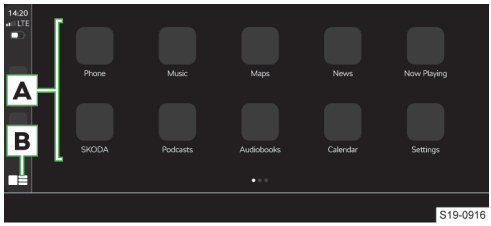


◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of connection.

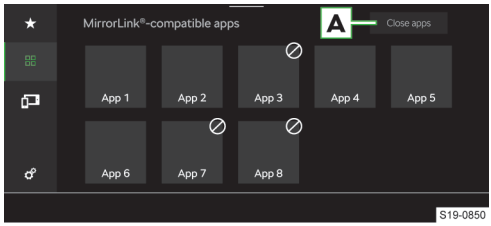


A List of available applications

B Depending on the length of operation:
- **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
- **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

MirrorLink

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of connection.



A Displaying the running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving.

★ Displaying the available devices

List of applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile device.

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection, Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports MirrorLink connectivity.

  A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connectivity can be found on the Car Connectivity Consortium® website.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the ⓒ symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the 🎤 button on the multi-function steering wheel.

   The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. In the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ▲ symbol.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap ◉ > "Skoda" in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap ⊗.

MirrorLink – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - terminating the connection

1. Tap ★ in MirrorLink menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ⋮ > 🔊.

Turn off navigation announcements

› Tap on ⋮ > 🔇.

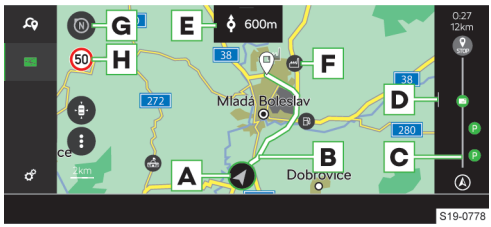
Overview

Displaying menu

› Tap **MENU** > ➤.

Map overview

› Tap 🗺 in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle location

B Route

C Route preview

D **Pressing and dragging to the left:** displaying the route overview

E The following navigation instruction

F Symbol of specific target

Tapping: displaying the details of the destination

G **Tapping:** changing map orientation

- › 2D north-facing map
- › 2D map oriented by direction of travel
- › 3D map oriented by direction of travel

H Traffic signs for the route section

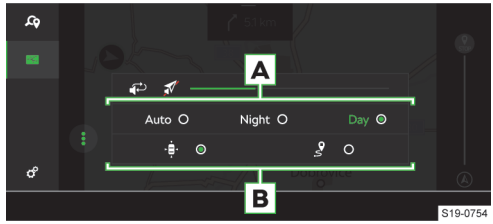
Exit navigation

Map centred on vehicle position

⋮ Displaying menu for setting the map view

Selecting the type of map to display

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap 🗺 > ⋮.



A The map displayed is based on the following settings:

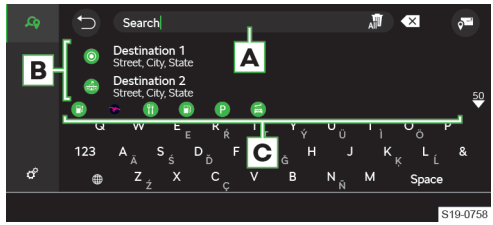
- › *Auto* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
- › *Day* – map in day mode
- › *Night* – map in night mode

B When navigation is in progress, you can select one of the following map displays:

- › – map centred on the vehicle's position
- › – map with the entire route / alternative routes selection

Finding a destination

› Tap 🔍 > *Search* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Input line

B The list of last searched destinations

C Categories of specific destinations

› **Tap:** search by the category selected

▼ Displaying the list of searched entries

Setting the destination by entering the address

Selecting a search target

1. Enter the data to search for a target.
2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Setting the destination by entering the address

1. Tap > *Search* > in the **Navigation** menu.

   The menu for entering a destination by address is displayed.
2. Enter the required details.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Start*.

Entering a destination using GPS coordinates

1. In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Search* > > *Enter latitude and longitude*.

   The menu for entering a destination by GPS coordinates is displayed.
2. Enter the desired GPS coordinates including the latitude and longitude.
3. Tap *Map*.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Start*.

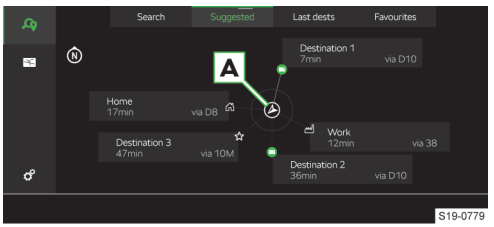
Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Suggested destinations

› Tap > *Suggestions* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle position oriented north

Home address destination

Work address destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Work address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Deleting a suggested destination

1. Tap the button for the suggested destination and swipe left.
2. Tap .

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by the Infotainment system depending on the frequency of trips and the time of day you drive to the destination.

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

› Tap > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage patterns*.

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› Tap > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Recent destinations*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

The list of recent destinations can also be displayed in the Instrument cluster display.

1. Select the Navigation menu.
2. Press on the multifunction steering wheel.

   The menu will be displayed.

List of favourite destinations

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Preferred*.

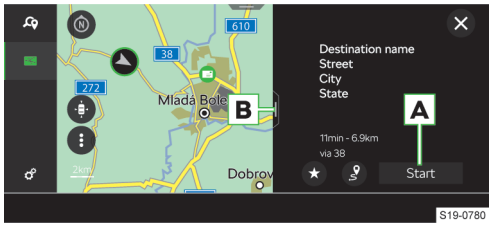
Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Destination details

The window with details include a map, available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

› After finding or selecting a destination in the menu.
› When you tap the destination in the route overview.
› When you tap a point or special destination symbol on the map.

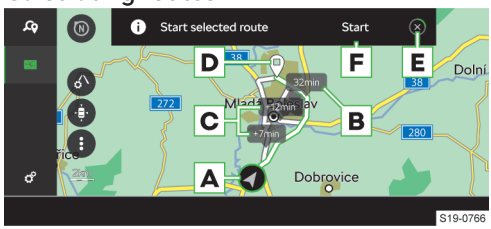


A Starting navigation to the destination
› ☆ – saving the destination as a preferred one
› ★ – deleting a favourite destination

B **Tapping and dragging to the left:** enlarging the window with destination details
Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:
› *Demo* – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode
› *Rename* – changing the name of the saved destination
› *Call* – dialling the phone number of a special destination
› *Edit* – an option to edit the home or work address
› *Add* – adding a destination to the route
› *Stop route guidance* – stopping navigation

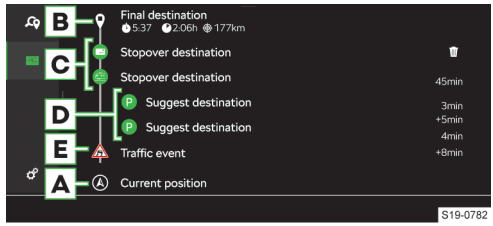
Displaying the route

Calculating routes



A Current vehicle position
B Suggested fastest route
C Alternative routes
D Destination location
E 15 s countdown before automatic start of navigation
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown
F Starting navigation
Displaying the selected route information
Setting parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on the current vehicle position
B Final destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Stop route guidance*
C Inserted destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Add inserted destination*
D Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Add inserted destination*
E Traffic restrictions on the route

Changing the route destinations

In the route overview, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the destination button is unlocked.
2. Drag the destination to the desired position and release the button.

The route will be recalculated.

Traffic density overview

If the Škoda Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the route overview:

Low density — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available

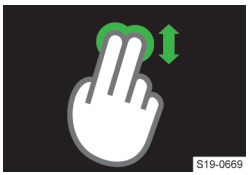
Operation



› Scrolling the map



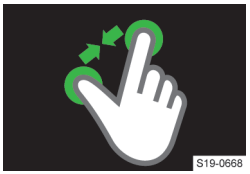
› Tapping a point on the map to enter a destination



› Changing the map view 2D/3D



› Zooming in on the map



› Zooming out of the map



› Rotating the map

Restrictions

The Infotainment system may issue incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or traffic conditions do not match the navigation data. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

For information on updating navigation data, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Settings

Bypassing a traffic obstruction

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment system receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from the online traffic news, the route will be recalculated.

Based on the following settings, the Infotainment system may suggest to avoid a traffic congestion:

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Avoid traffic congestion*.
2. Select the desired item.

Switching fuel shortage warning on/off

If the function is switched on and the fuel supply drops into the reserve area, a warning message will be displayed with the option to locate the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Fuel warning*.

Switching the country speed limit display on/off.

If the function is switched on, the speed limits of the country are displayed when you cross the border.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of signs on motorways and express ways on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs and signals on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Info signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the traffic signs display on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs along the route.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Road signs* › *Show on map*.

Switching the speeding warning on/off

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Road signs*.
2. Set the warning method and the exceeded speed limit value.

Driving with a trailer

To calculate the correct route for driving with a trailer, enable trailer consideration.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Include trailer*.

To calculate the correct route time, set the maximum speed for the trailer.

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Maximum speed for trailer*.
2. Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting the route parameters

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Route options*.
2. Select the desired items.

Setting navigation instructions

1. Tap ⚙ › *Navigation announcements*.
2. Select and set the desired item.

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

› Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage patterns*.

Deleting information for suggesting frequently visited special destinations

1. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

1. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Specify preferred special destination categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Switching demo mode on/off

In demo mode, navigation from the starting point of demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

If the function is switched on, the Infotainment system asks whether to navigate normally or in demo mode before starting navigation.

› Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Setting the demo mode starting point

1. Switch demo mode on.
2. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
3. Search for the desired destination to be the demo mode starting point.

Or:

1. Switch demo mode on.
2. Select or search for the desired destination to be the demo mode starting point.

   The details of the destination will be displayed.
3. Display the window with the target details on the full screen.

   To enlarge the window, tap the ❙ button on the window bar and drag to the left.
4. Tap *Demo*.

Setting the home address

1. Tap 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Home*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› Tap 🔍 > *Suggested* > 🏠.

Setting the work address

1. Tap 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Work*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› Tap 🔍 > *Suggested* > 🏢.

Updating the navigation database

For information on updating the navigation database, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.

✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

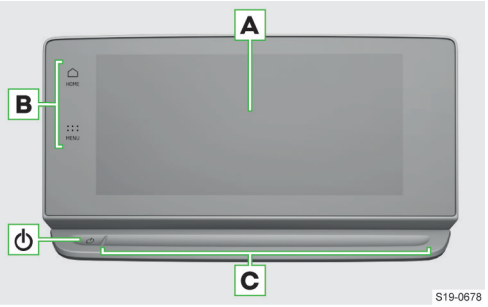
Video – Navigation

Navigation – basic functions

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-navigation-system

Infotainment Columbus

The Infotainment system overview



A Touchscreen

B Functional buttons
- **HOME** – preferred menus
- **MENU** – all menus

C Touch bar for volume control

⏻ Depending on the status:
- **The Infotainment system off**
  - **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on
- **The Infotainment system on**
  - **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off
  - **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:
- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:
- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:
- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment.
- To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
- For **manual display**, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting up the HOME menu

› To **view the next page** of the HOME menu, tap the display and drag it left or right.

Adding a preferred menu:

› To **display edit mode**, hold the finger on the display.

› Tap a vacant field with buttons.

› Select the menu with the desired dimension of the function area.

The Infotainment system only offers font sizes that correspond in dimension to the fields with buttons that are currently free.

› To **close edit mode**, tap ×.

Removing a preferred menu:

› To **display edit mode**, tap and hold the finger on the display.

› Tap 🗑 on the desired menu.

› To **close edit mode**, tap ×.

Adding/removing a page in the HOME menu

› To **display edit mode**, tap and hold the finger on the display.

› Tap ✎.

› To **add another page**, tap **+**.

The maximum number of pages is 4.

› To **remove a page**, tap 🗑.

The minimum number of pages is 2.

› To **return to edit mode**, tap ⮌.

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Factory settings

The factory settings will restore all settings of the Infotainment system from the factory.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙.
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

ⓘ To check for a successful factory reset, make sure all user accounts have been deleted.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Display all updates*.
2. Select the required update and follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

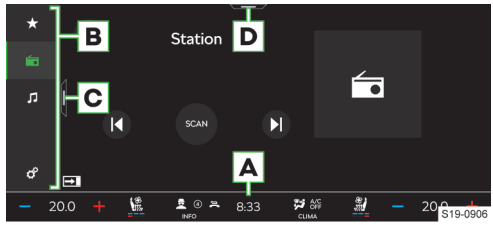
Video – the Infotainment system

The Infotainment system – individual customisation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-infotainment

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display/close the submenu window

D Display of the Infotainment control centre

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

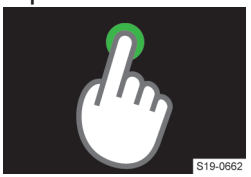
Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Tap



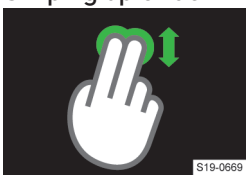
› Select function or menu item

Hold call



› Zoom into the map

Swiping up or down with two fingers



› Fast scrolling through lists
› Changing the map view 2D/3D

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



› Zoom out of the map

Turn two fingers



› Rotate the map

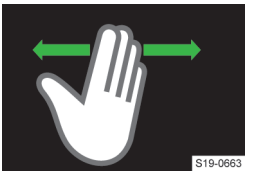
Press and hold



› Release certain Infotainment menus with the option to move them to another location on the screen

Contactless gesture control

Some Infotainment menus can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Image of the screen background
› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



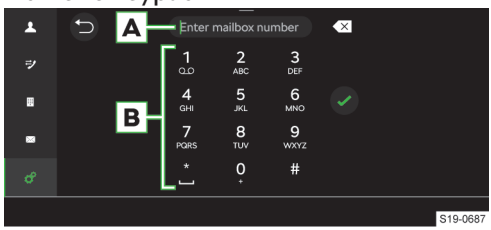
Keypad example

A Input line
- › Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- › ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - › **Tap:** delete the last entered character
  - › **Hold:** delete all entered characters in sequence
- › Delete all entered characters

B Entries searched for
- › ▼ Show list of searched entries

C Keypad functional surfaces
- › ⬆ Change sentence case
- › **abc** Switch to the language keypad
- › **123** / **12#** Switch to the numeric/character keyboard
- › **1/2** / **2/2** Switch to other character variants
- › Show additional keypad languages
- › Display the entered password
- › OK / ✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- › Touch the input line to display function areas for moving the cursor
- › ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - › **Tap:** delete the last character
  - › **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

✓ Confirm the characters that have been entered

ⓘ If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically**when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ▼.

The number of searched entries is displayed above the symbol ▼.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› To **use**, repeatedly tap on the keyboard or on the flag icon until the desired language keyboard is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Hold the symbol with another variant.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

1. To **set**, tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages*.
2. Select the desired language.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Vice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

The dialogue can be interrupted at any time and a new command can be given. There is no need to wait for the response to complete.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition and control of other vehicle functions.

Online voice control can be used, for example, to search for special destinations or to dictate an SMS message if the connected phone allows it.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

Extended online voice control
Enhanced online voice control of the vehicle extends the functionality to search for navigation and special destinations online using the vehicle's current GPS position. This option will improve the relevance of search results and speed up system response.

Operating conditions
- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions
In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The vehicle supports the function.
- ✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Extended Voice Control – conditions
In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

- ✓ The voice assistant in the vehicle is granted access to the current GPS position of the vehicle.

Activation command recognition condition
- ✓ Enabled **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

Entering a voice command
› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

ⓘ You can speed up voice control as follows:

1. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.
2. Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

ⓘ If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot".

Correcting a voice command
› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control
Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control
A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Press on the Infotainment system display.
3. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Stopping a message being played
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say a new voice command.

Ending voice control
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restrictions
Voice control is not available for some Infotainment languages. The Infotainment system will alert you to this fact.

The directional microphone only obeys the voice commands of the user who has woken up the voice assistant.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system and it is not always possible to guarantee complete comprehensibility of e.g. street or city names.

The voice control cannot be used while a phone call is in progress and you can only dictate an SMS message from the driver's seat.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones

› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Giving/revoking consent to the voice assistant to access the current GPS position of the vehicle

› Press **MENU** > *Instructions* > *Speech* > *Navigation* > *Optimizing online search for destinations*.

ⓘ Consent can also be set in MyŠkoda application.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > ▮ > 🔊.

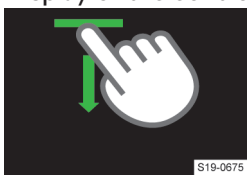
Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"Overview"**.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

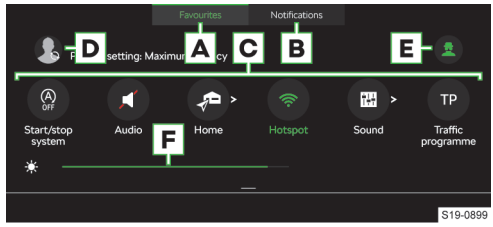
› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features.

B Display list of informational messages.

C Preferred functions

D Display user account management.

E Setting the personal data protection level.

F Setting the instrument and key illumination.

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the **+** icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, hold down the functional surface of the desired function and move it from the lower part of the screen to the functional surface in the upper part of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ⮌.

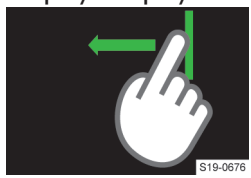
Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.

Display the player



1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

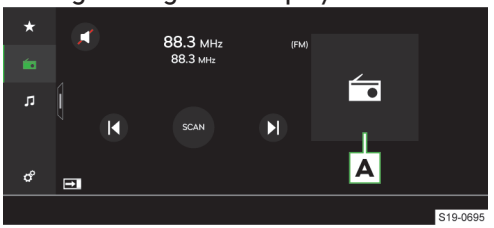
Close player

› Tap on ⮕.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Analog and digital radio player



A Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

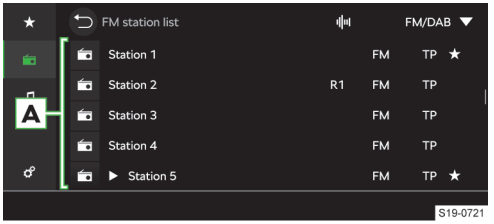
SCAN Switching the Scan function on/off

🔇 Switching the sound on/off

⇥ Closing the player

List of available analog and digital radio stations

1. To **display**, tap **MENU** > ♫ > 📻.
2. Tap ▼.
3. Select FM/DAB or AM.



A List of available stations

⮌ Displaying the available frequency ranges
After selecting a frequency range, you must also select the desired station.

▼ Selecting a frequency range
After selecting a frequency range, the last played station in that range will be played.

▶ Currently playing station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

TP The station broadcasts traffic information

The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.

Manual update of the station list

ⓘ The station list can display information about the program type and identification of the regional station.

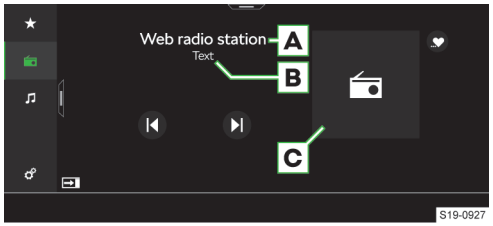
Web radio player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. To **select web station**, press in the **Radio** menu 📻▼>>*Web radio*.
2. Select the web station from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search a web radio station.



A Station name

B Broadcast content information

C Station logo

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

❤ Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

⇥ Closing the player

ⓘ If the 🛰 symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

Podcast player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. To **select podcast**, press in the **Radio** menu > ♫ > 📻 > ▼ > *Web radio*.
2. Select the podcast from the display lists.

Or:

› Tap 🔍 to search podcasts.

ⓘ The podcasts are marked with the 🎙 symbol in the displayed lists.



A Podcast name

B Broadcast content information

C Podcast logo

▷ Starting playback

Pausing

⏮ / ⏭ Switch to previous/next available station
The switching mode depends on the settings of arrows ⚙ > *Radio* > *Arrows:*.

15 Rewind 15 seconds back

15 Fast forward 15 seconds

Displaying related web radio stations and podcasts

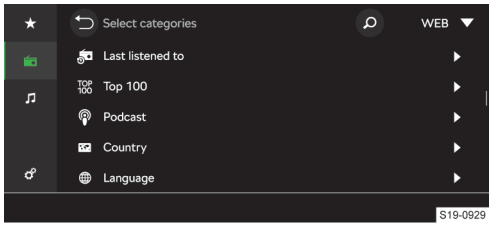
View episodes from the podcast being played

Closing the player

If the symbol is displayed, no internet connection is available.

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› To **display the list**, in the **Radio** menu > ▼ > tap *Web radio* .



Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

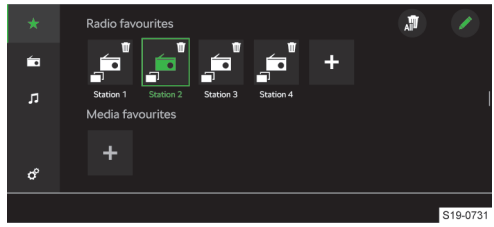
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

Preset radio stations and podcasts

You can store stations from all available frequency ranges, web radios and podcasts in the presets.

› Tap **MENU** > ♫ > ★.



+ Storing the currently playing station or podcast

Switching the edit mode on/off

› – deleting all preferred station and media presets

› – deleting the desired preset

› – changing logo

The position of the stored presets can be changed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired preset, until it is released.
3. Move the preset to a different position.

Operation

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› Display the radio player.

› To **start playback**, tap SCAN.

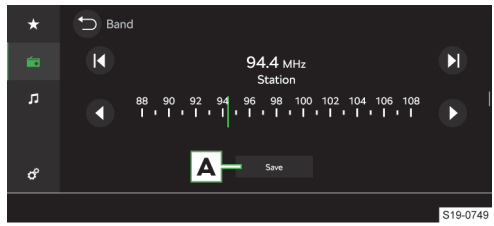
› To **stop playback**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

1. View the list of available stations.
2. Tap .

For FM stations, the button is available, if the item **MENU** > ♫ > ⚙ > *Radio* > *Show stations:* is set. > *FM*.



⏮ / ⏭ Scroll to previous/next available station

◀ / ▶ Step-by-step search

A Saving the currently tuned station to the preferred station presets

ⓘ Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.
› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Store the current station to a preset button for preferred stations

› To **store**, tap on ★ › + in the **Radio** menu.

Storing a station to the preferred stations preset from the list of available stations

1. To **display the list of stations** in the **Radio** menu, tap 📻.
2. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
3. Tap + or tap the preferred stations preset that you want to replace.

Deleting a stored preferred station preset

› To **delete** a station from the **Radio** menu, tap ★ › ✎.
  › To delete **one** preset, tap 🗑.
  › To delete **all** presets, tap 🗑 and confirm.

⏮ / ⏭ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

To **To set the mode of switching stations in the radio player** using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons, do the following:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio* › *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

⏮ / ⏭ Buttons for web radios and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ⏮ / ⏭ buttons in **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your favourites presets or stations in the list of available stations and podcasts.

Switching receiving traffic program (TP) on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

When the function is activated and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the Infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Tuned station display on the instrument cluster

1. Select the menu showing the travel time and distance travelled.
2. Hold the ⏮/⏭ button on the multi-function steering wheel for at least 5 seconds.

   When the button is released, the menu is displayed.
3. Select the item *Track change info* from the menu.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. Tap ⚙ in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* › *RDS Regional:*.
3. Select one of the following menu items:

› *Fixed* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Switching radio text reception on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, detailed information about the broadcast content of the current station is displayed.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Radiotext*.

Switching the function on/off Slideshow

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Press the displayed radio text in the **Radio** player.

Adding station logos

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

› Tap > *Radio* > *Radio stations logos* in the**Radio** menu.

Or:

1. Tap > the desired preset in the preferred stations list.
2. Select the desired logo.

To turn off the logo display, tap in the list of available logos.

Enabling/disabling automatic station logo assignment

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Automatic station logo assignment*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Station region logo:*.

Switching DAB stations additional announcements on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When this function is activated, announcements other than traffic announcements will be received. These include e.g. weather forecast, sports reports, financial news, etc.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *DAB supplementary reports*.

Displaying FM/DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following settings, the stations of the selected frequency band will appear in the list of available stations.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Station display:*.
3. Select one of the following menu items:
   › *FM/DAB* – available FM and DAB stations are displayed in the list.
   › *FM* – available FM stations are displayed in the list.

Switching on/off automatic retuning to a similar DAB station

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is activated and the DAB station signal is lost, the Infotainment system automatically retunes to another DAB station with a similar content.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Tap *Radio* > *Switching to a similar station in the event of weak signal*.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

1. Tap in the **Radio** menu.
2. Press *Radio* > *Audio quality:*.
3. Select high or low quality.

The quality setting affects the volume of data consumed by the data link.

The quality is also affected by the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback drop-outs occur, reduce the audio quality.

Media

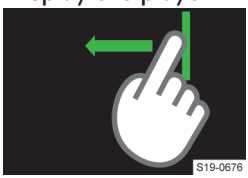
What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display the player



1. Tap **MENU** > ♫.
2. Press the functional surface on the bar on the right edge of the display and drag it to the left.

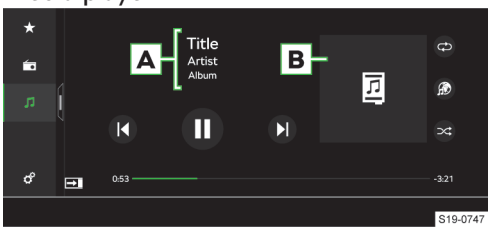
Close player

› Tap on ⇥.

Or:

› Press the bar button on the left edge of the player and drag to the right.

Media player

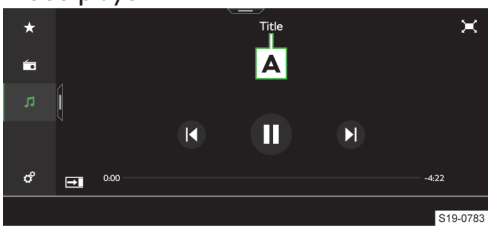


A Available information about the track, artist and album being played

B Album image

⇥ Close player

Video player



A Name of the track being played

⤧ Zoom out of/in to picture display

⇥ Close player

Media list



A Select source

B Multimedia database, divided into music, videos and playlists

C List of connected mobile devices

⮌ Show available sources

Preferred media

The currently played media can be stored on the preset buttons for preferred media.

Depending on the available information, the track, the album, the artist name and the allocated genre can be stored.

› To **display** tap on ★ in the **Media** menu.

Player controls

Operation – basics

▷ Starting playback

▯▯ Pausing

◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track

▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

ⓘ You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

⇄ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

⇄ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

⤨ Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

› To **store the currently playing track to the playlist**, tap on in the media player.
› To **display the playlist**, tap on ♫.
› Tap on ⮌ until the media list for the current source is displayed.

› Tap on ▸ ›.
› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

› Control playback
› Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ⇅ to the desired position.
› Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

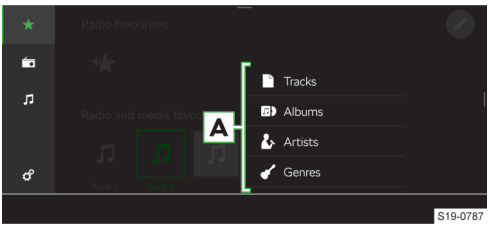
Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites

› To **save** the preferred medium, tap on **Media** ★ › + in the menu.
› Select a menu item from the following menu A.



› To **delete a preferred menu item**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.
› To **delete all preferred menu items**, tap on ★ › ✎ › 🗑 in the **Media** main menu.

Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** receiving traffic news during playback of media files, tap ⚙ › *Media* › *Traffic program (TP)* in the **Media** menu.

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass	

Type	Specification	File system
	Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

ⓘ Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	

Codec type	File extension
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, please observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.
› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

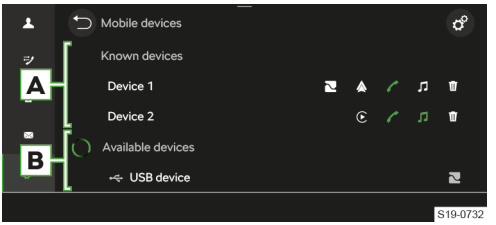
Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.



A Connected/previously connected devices
B Available devices
The device enables connection via Bluetooth® "hands free" profile
The device enables connection viaBluetooth® audio profile
Removing the device from the list of **previously connected devices**
The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

- The device enables SmartLink connection via MirrorLink

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system or mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Mobile device*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or WLAN, as long as the mobile device supports .

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via WLAN.

2. Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

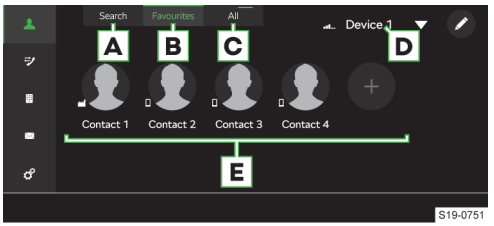
› Tap **MENU** > .

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.

Manage contacts

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

› If two phones are connected, tap ▼ and select the desired phone.



A Contact search

B Display favourite contacts

C Display the list of all contacts

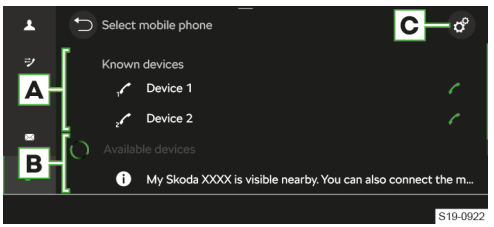
D Name of the main telephone

E Preset buttons for preferred contacts

If no phone contacts are displayed, check the request to confirm the import of contacts in the connected mobile device.

Managing phones

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap .
2. Tap *Select mobile phone*.



A Main phone, additional phone and known devices

B List of available phones

C The Bluetooth® settings in the Infotainment system

Phone enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

Deleting a phone from the list of known devices

To view the trash symbol and available SmartLink connections, tap the symbol and drag it to the left.

If the connection symbol is green, the connection is active.

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the phone is switched on.

Bluetooth® of the Infotainment system can be switched on under **MENU** > > *Mobile device* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system is switched on.

Visibility of the Infotainment system can be switched on under **MENU** > > *Mobile device* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ The phone is within Bluetooth® signal range of the Infotainment system.

✓ The phone is compatible with the Infotainment system.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. Tap **MENU** > > .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.
3. To **dial**, tap .

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Connecting to the voice mailbox number

1. Tap **MENU** > > .
2. Tap .

If no voice mailbox number is entered, you will be prompted to enter one.

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call

Receiving an incoming call

Returning to a call on hold

Switching the ringer off

Switching the ringer on

Holding a call

Switching the microphone off

Switching the microphone on

Displaying caller details

Rejecting an incoming call by a text message

Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone.
The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the phone,** tap .

› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily the conference continues in the background
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Sending a text message

1. Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

   Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select *SMS*.
2. Tap .
3. Type and confirm the text message, and a preview of the message will appear.

   If you tap the text area in the message preview, the message can be edited.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the message.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

1. Tap > in the **Phone** menu.

   Depending on the connected phone, you may still need to select *SMS*.
2. Tap .

Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following settings.

› To **switch on/off displaying messages as a conversation**, tap > *Display messages as conversation* in the **Phone** menu.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

Depending on the context, the Infotainment system can read for you a text message using Infotainment-generated voice, if you tap .

To quickly reply to the selected message, tap and select the desired reply.

Sending an email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap > > *EMAIL* > .
2. Enter the subject of the message.
3. Write and confirm the email, and its preview will be displayed.
4. Search for or select the recipient of the email.

   Several recipients can be included.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap on > > *EMAIL*.
2. Select the desired email.

You can select the following features in the email displayed:

- Reply to all or only to sender.
- Reply with a new email.
- Forward email.
- Manage email.

If the symbol is displayed, the email contains an attachment.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone - if no phone is connected.

› Additional phone - if one phone is connected.

› Select which phone to replace - if 2 phones are connected.

1. To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** ▼ in any menu.
2. Select the desired phone.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > > > *Select mobile phone*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > > > *Select mobile phone*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts

› To **display preferred contacts**, tap in the **Phone** menu.

› To **save a contact**, tap **+**.

› Select or search for the required contact.

› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

› To **delete a contact**, tap > in the **Phone** menu.

  › To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap and confirm.

  › To delete **all** preset preferred contacts, tap and confirm.

The position of the stored presets can be changed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the desired contact until it is released.
3. Move the contact to another position.

Voice mailbox number

1. To **set the voice mailbox number**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone. Instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To **set the Infotainment system ringtone**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Switch HD voice quality for a call on/off

This function makes it possible to improve the quality of a telephone call.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *HD voice quality* .

Turn call rejection with a message on/off

If a call is rejected when this function is switched on, an SMS message can be sent to the caller.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *Reject call with SMS template* .

Sorting contacts in the phone book

1. Tap > *Sort by:* in the **Phone** menu.
2. Select the required sorting option.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to five phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When connecting the next telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Switch message viewing as a conversation on/off

When this function is switched on, messages are displayed as a conversation.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *Show messages as conversation* .

Switching on/off graphical notification of receiving new message/email

If the feature is activated, a new message symbol will appear in the status bar and on the message functional surface when a new message/email is received.

› In **Phone** menu, tap > *Notification of new messages*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

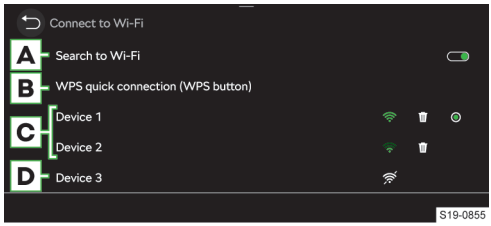
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

List of available hotspots

› To **display the list**, tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Search for available visible hotspots

B Connection to the hotspot via WPS

C Previously connected hotspots

D Available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Signal strength of the hotspot

Hotspot signal is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment system WLAN hotspot in **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on Wi-Fi in the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment WLAN Units under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *WLAN:* > *Searching for Wi-Fi*.
2. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available hotspots.
3. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

ⓘ The Infotainment system remembers the passwords of previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Data transmission with the connected device

› To turn data transmission with the connected device on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Password:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of the Infotainment system to a mobile device hotspot

1. Turn on the hotspot on your mobile device, its visibility, and turn on WPS connection.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *WLAN:* > *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.

Automatic WPS connection

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the WPS connection option on your mobile device.
3. Wait until the connection is established or confirm the appropriate messages.

Manual WPS connection

1. Turn on the WPS connection option on your mobile device using PIN.

   WPS PIN for establishing connection with the Infotainment system appears on your mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS PIN*.
3. Enter and confirm WPS PIN in the Infotainment system.
4. Wait until the connection is established or confirm the appropriate messages.

Automatic connection using a QR code

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system display with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

- Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
- Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
- For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
- If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

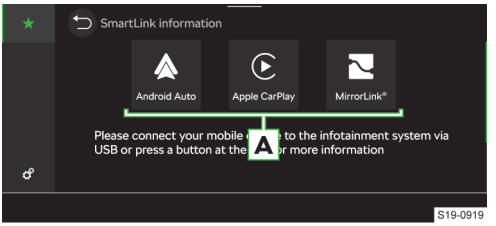
- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Overview of SmartLink connection

Display menu

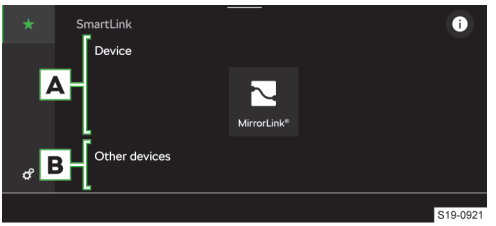
- Tap **MENU** > ▪▪.

Menu for device not connected



A List of supporting connection types

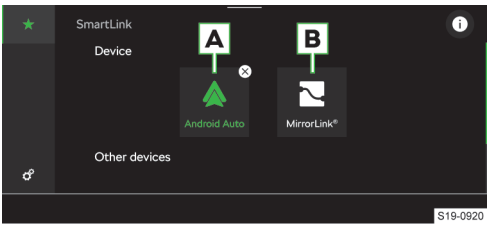
Menu for connected devices



A List of connected devices and available connection types

B List of available devices

Menu for a device used



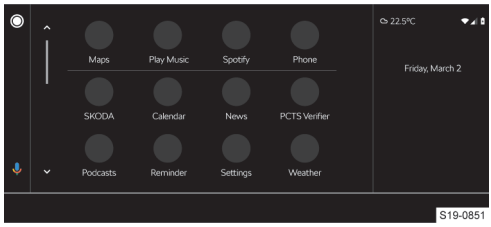
A Used connection type

B Available connection type

⊗ Disconnect

Android Auto

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of ⩓ connection.

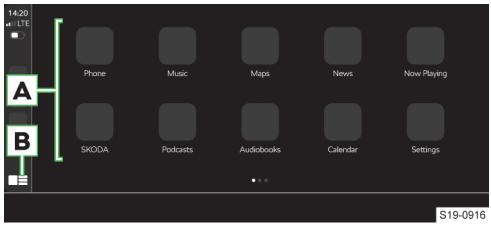


◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of connection.

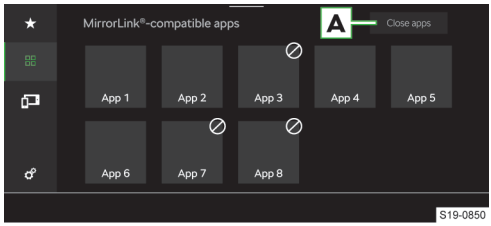


A List of available applications

B Depending on the length of operation:
- **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
- **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

MirrorLink

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the connected device.
3. Select the type of connection.



A Displaying the running applications

⊘ It is not possible to operate the application while driving.

★ Displaying the available devices

List of applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile device.

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection, Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports MirrorLink connectivity.

  A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connectivity can be found on the Car Connectivity Consortium® website.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the ⓒ symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the 🎤 button on the multi-function steering wheel.

   The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > ▪ > ⚙ > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
7. In the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ▲ symbol.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap ◉ > "Skoda" in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap ⊗.

MirrorLink – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - terminating the connection

1. Tap ★ in MirrorLink menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap ★ in SmartLink menu.
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ⋮ > 🔊.

Turn off navigation announcements

› Tap on ⋮ > 🔇.

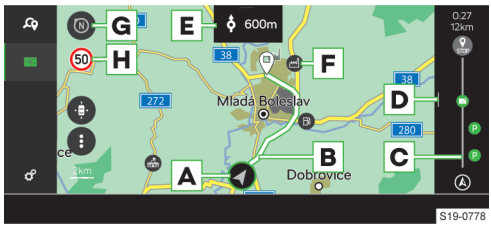
Overview

Displaying menu

› Tap **MENU** > ➤.

Map overview

› Tap 🗺 in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle location

B Route

C Route preview

D **Pressing and dragging to the left:** displaying the route overview

E The following navigation instruction

F Symbol of specific target

Tapping: displaying the details of the destination

G **Tapping:** changing map orientation

- › 2D north-facing map
- › 2D map oriented by direction of travel
- › 3D map oriented by direction of travel

H Traffic signs for the route section

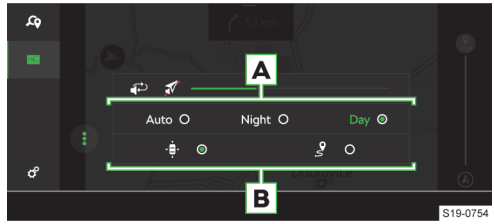
Exit navigation

Map centred on vehicle position

⋮ Displaying menu for setting the map view

Selecting the type of map to display

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap 🗺 > ⋮.



A The map displayed is based on the following settings:

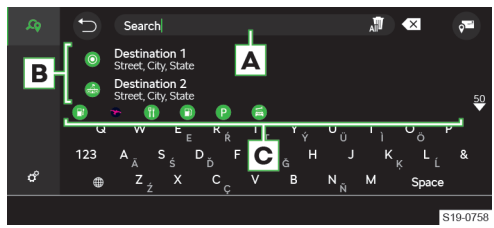
- › *Auto* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
- › *Day* – map in day mode
- › *Night* – map in night mode

B When navigation is in progress, you can select one of the following map displays:

- › ⊙ – map centred on the vehicle's position
- › 📍 – map with the entire route / alternative routes selection

Finding a destination

› Tap 🔍 > *Search* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Input line

B The list of last searched destinations

C Categories of specific destinations

› **Tap:** search by the category selected

▼ Displaying the list of searched entries

Setting the destination by entering the address

Selecting a search target

1. Enter the data to search for a target.
2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Setting the destination by entering the address

1. Tap > *Search* > in the **Navigation** menu.

   The menu for entering a destination by address is displayed.
2. Enter the required details.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Start*.

Entering a destination using GPS coordinates

1. In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Search* > > *Enter latitude and longitude*.

   The menu for entering a destination by GPS coordinates is displayed.
2. Enter the desired GPS coordinates including the latitude and longitude.
3. Tap *Map*.

   The details of the searched destination are displayed, with the option to start navigating to the destination by tapping *Start*.

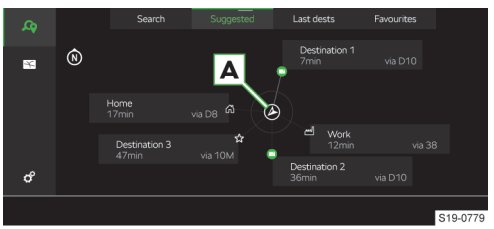
Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Suggested destinations

› Tap > *Suggestions* in the **Navigation** menu.



A Vehicle position oriented north

Home address destination

Work address destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Work address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Deleting a suggested destination

1. Tap the button for the suggested destination and swipe left.
2. Tap .

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by the Infotainment system depending on the frequency of trips and the time of day you drive to the destination.

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

› Tap > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage patterns*.

Deleting information for suggesting predictive destinations

› Tap > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.

List of last destinations

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Recent destinations*.

Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

The list of recent destinations can also be displayed in the Instrument cluster display.

1. Select the Navigation menu.
2. Press on the multifunction steering wheel.

   The menu will be displayed.

List of favourite destinations

› In the **Navigation** menu, tap > *Preferred*.

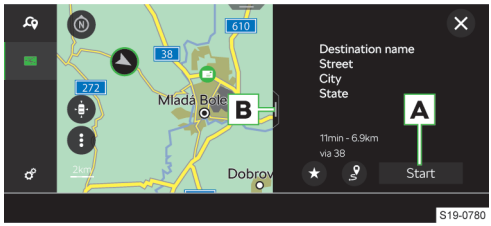
Tapping the list with the destination displays destination details with the option to start route guidance.

Destination details

The window with details include a map, available destination information and buttons for selecting functions.

The target details window will be displayed in the following cases:

› After finding or selecting a destination in the menu.
› When you tap the destination in the route overview.
› When you tap a point or special destination symbol on the map.

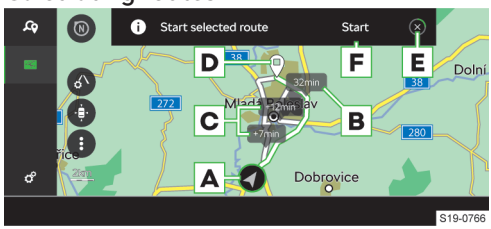


A Starting navigation to the destination
› ☆ – saving the destination as a preferred one
› ★ – deleting a favourite destination

B **Tapping and dragging to the left:** enlarging the window with destination details
Depending on the context and the type of destination, the following functions will be displayed:
› *Demo* – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode
› *Rename* – changing the name of the saved destination
› *Call* – dialling the phone number of a special destination
› *Edit* – an option to edit the home or work address
› *Add* – adding a destination to the route
› *Stop route guidance* – stopping navigation

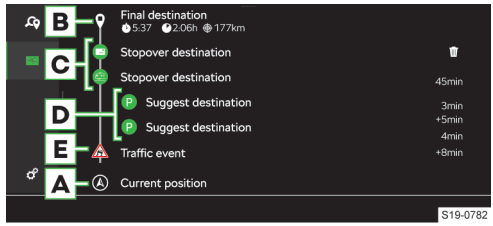
Displaying the route

Calculating routes



A Current vehicle position
B Suggested fastest route
C Alternative routes
D Destination location
E 15 s countdown before automatic start of navigation
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown
F Starting navigation
Displaying the selected route information
Setting parameters for route calculation

Route overview



A Information on the current vehicle position
B Final destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Stop route guidance*
C Inserted destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Add inserted destination*
D Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on the map*
› *Add inserted destination*
E Traffic restrictions on the route

Changing the route destinations

In the route overview, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the destination button is unlocked.
2. Drag the destination to the desired position and release the button.

The route will be recalculated.

Traffic density overview

If the Škoda Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the route overview:

Low density — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available

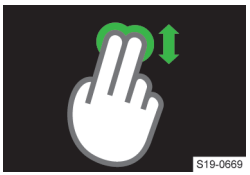
Operation



› Scrolling the map



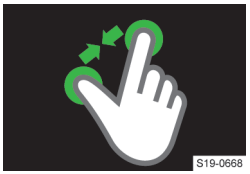
› Tapping a point on the map to enter a destination



› Changing the map view 2D/3D



› Zooming in on the map



› Zooming out of the map



› Rotating the map

Restrictions

The Infotainment system may issue incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or traffic conditions do not match the navigation data. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

For information on updating navigation data, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Settings

Bypassing a traffic obstruction

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment system receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from the online traffic news, the route will be recalculated.

Based on the following settings, the Infotainment system may suggest to avoid a traffic congestion:

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Avoid traffic congestion*.
2. Select the desired item.

Switching fuel shortage warning on/off

If the function is switched on and the fuel supply drops into the reserve area, a warning message will be displayed with the option to locate the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Fuel warning*.

Switching the country speed limit display on/off.

If the function is switched on, the speed limits of the country are displayed when you cross the border.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of signs on motorways and express ways on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs and signals on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Info signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the traffic signs display on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs along the route.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Road signs* › *Show on map*.

Switching the speeding warning on/off

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Road signs*.
2. Set the warning method and the exceeded speed limit value.

Driving with a trailer

To calculate the correct route for driving with a trailer, enable trailer consideration.

› Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Include trailer*.

To calculate the correct route time, set the maximum speed for the trailer.

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Maximum speed for trailer*.
2. Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting the route parameters

1. Tap ⚙ › *Route guidance* › *Route options*.
2. Select the desired items.

Setting navigation instructions

1. Tap ⚙ › *Navigation announcements*.
2. Select and set the desired item.

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

› Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage patterns*.

Deleting information for suggesting frequently visited special destinations

1. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage pattern*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

1. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Specify preferred special destination categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Switching demo mode on/off

In demo mode, navigation from the starting point of demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

If the function is switched on, the Infotainment system asks whether to navigate normally or in demo mode before starting navigation.

› Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Setting the demo mode starting point

1. Switch demo mode on.
2. Tap ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Define demo mode starting point*.
3. Search for the desired destination to be the demo mode starting point.

Or:

1. Switch demo mode on.
2. Select or search for the desired destination to be the demo mode starting point.

   The details of the destination will be displayed.
3. Display the window with the target details on the full screen.

   To enlarge the window, tap the ▌ button on the window bar and drag to the left.
4. Tap *Demo*.

Setting the home address

1. Tap 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Home*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› Tap 🔍 > *Suggested* > 🏠.

Setting the work address

1. Tap 🔍 > *Favourites* > *Work*.
2. Select and enter the destination address or use the current location of the vehicle.

The set home address destination is displayed in the suggested destinations overview.

› Tap 🔍 > *Suggested* > 🏢.

Updating the navigation database

For information on updating the navigation database, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.

✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Video – Navigation

Navigation – basic functions

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-navigation-system

Online services

Škoda Connect

Regulations

Rights and obligations of the parties arising from the provision of these services are regulated in a separate contractual arrangement. Current legal documents relating to Škoda Connect services can be found on Škoda Connect Portal and in MyŠkoda application.

Functionality

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect services are not included in the vehicle equipment. They can be ordered separately from the Škoda Connect Portal, in MyŠkoda application or in the Infotainment system, if the Infotainment system allows it.

The range of Škoda Connect services depends on the type and equipment of the vehicle, on the Infotainment system and the country.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, a link to Škoda Connect Portal or the option to download MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

The Škoda Connect Portal website

The Škoda Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Conditions

Škoda Connect services - conditions of use

- ✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The currently logged-in user is authorised to use Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The set level of protection for sending personal data enables the use of Škoda Connect services.

Availability of Škoda Connect services

Availability is based on the following conditions:

- › Mobile networks providing connection to Škoda Connect services are available.
  - › Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
  - › In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- › Škoda Connect services are available for your vehicle, for the Infotainment system and for the country.
  - › You can check availability on the following Škoda Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of Škoda Connect services

The availability status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

- › **White** – Škoda Connect services are available.
- › **Grey** – Škoda Connect services are not available.

Restrictions

Škoda Connect services may be limited or interrupted in the following cases:

› During maintenance, deactivation, software updates, or restrictions with mobile network providers.
› Failure or insufficient reception of the GPS or mobile network signal, e.g. at high speed.
› If you are in locations with poor or no signal, e.g. underground garages, tunnels, mountain valleys.
› In case of limited availability, incomplete or incorrect information from third party providers, e.g. map display.

MyŠkoda application

Functionality

MyŠkoda application

The MyŠkoda website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, or remote access to the vehicle.

You can download the application to your mobile device by loading the following the QR code or the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda-app

Conditions

✓ The user has the Škoda ID account paired with the vehicle.
✓ The Škoda Connect services in the vehicle are active.

Škoda Connect services user registration and activation

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a Škoda ID user account that you can use in all Škoda applications and services.

You can register as a Škoda Connect user at the following locations:

› The Škoda Connect Portal website
› MyŠkoda application

When registering, you will create an S-PIN.
You will need your S-PIN to log in to some Škoda Connect services and to log in to your protected user account.

Settings

User registration in the Infotainment system

To complete the registration, you must have access to the email address entered during registration.

› Switch on the Infotainment system and tap *Change user* > *Register* in the welcome window that appears and follow the instructions on the display.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > > + > *Register* and follow the instructions on the display.

Completing user registration and creating a user account on the Infotainment system is only possible in Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

Activating Škoda Connect services when registering as a primary user

Once you have completed registration of the primary user, you will be prompted by the Infotainment system to activate Škoda Connect services.

You must have two original vehicle keys with you to complete the activation.

› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Activating Škoda Connect services for another logged-in user

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Become primary user* > *Become primary user*.
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions.

The current privacy statement on protecting personal data can be found on this website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a party to the use of Škoda Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure

to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information about the last parking position, notifications about leaving an area or speeding notifications.

If the passenger does not agree to the use of location services, turn off the services by setting the appropriate privacy level.

Functionality

When using Škoda Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

The transmission is influenced by personal data protection settings.

The personal data protection settings affects the transmission of data via eSIM. It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via WLAN.

Settings

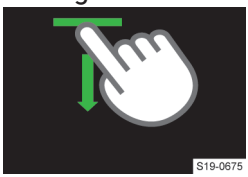
Legally required services, such as emergency calls, cannot be switched off.

Each vehicle user can set the level of personal data protection

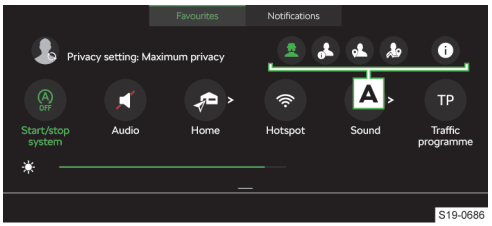
The level of personal data protection is linked to the User Account and is set according to the last set level when the user logs in.

Some Škoda Connect services require location services to be activated in order to be fully functional.

Settings in the control centre



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Columbus

A Setting up protection of personal data

ⓘ Detailed information on the protection levels of personal data

Settings in user management

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Privacy mode and service management*.
2. Setting required personal data protection level.

Maximum privacy mode

› All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.

› All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.

› Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.

› No online updates are available.

Vehicle and user data

› All Škoda Connect localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.

› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.

› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Using vehicle location

› Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is not provided to others.

› Vehicle location information is available on the Škoda Connect Portal website and in the MyŠkoda application.

› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.

› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Sharing vehicle location

› Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location to function.

› Vehicle location information is available on the Škoda Connect Portal website and in the MyŠkoda application.

› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.

› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymised data

When the protection level of personal data is set *Use location* and *Share my location* the vehicle can collect and send anonymised data to improve the services of selected third parties.

It is exclusively anonymous data without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

User management

What you should be mindful of

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user.

The previous owner may still be able to control the vehicle's functions and obtain information about users and the vehicle.

We therefore recommend deleting the previous primary user. Then log in with your own user account and set yourself as the primary user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the primary user during registration, the previous one will be automatically overwritten.

⚿ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User management displays the accounts of the most recently active users. In user management, you can do the following:

› Select a user account
› Register a user
› Activate the Škoda Connect services
› Add and remove user accounts
› Set up the primary user
› Set the security of the account
› Enable/disable the assignment of settings to the key used

Overview

The primary user

The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated Škoda Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The primary user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The primary user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The primary user has access to remote vehicle functions.

All settings are stored in the primary user's personal online account.

User with online Škoda Connect account

The user is not selected by the primary user, but has their own onlineŠkoda Connect account.

The user can make full use of the personalisation function.

All settings are stored in the logged-in user's personal online account.

Guest

The guest account is anonymous and does not synchronise with Škoda Connect services in any way.

All changes to the settings associated with this account remain stored in the vehicle only.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Conditions

In order to enjoy unlimited use of user account management and synchronisation with online accounts, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

User logging in

When the ignition and the Infotainment system are switched on, the initial login screen for the last user account used will be displayed.

› Confirm the logging in.

If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. Select the desired account.
3. If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

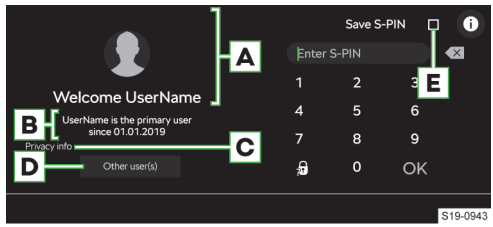
Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. If you are a new user, tap + to log in.
3. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Logging in to a protected user account

Some user accounts may be protected. Protected accounts are marked with the symbol 🔒 in the user list.

To **log in** to a protected user account, it is required to enter S-PIN you created when opening your user account on Škoda Connect Portal, in MyŠkoda application or during the user registration in the Infotainment system.



A User name
B Name of the main vehicle user
C The set personal data protection level
D Displaying user account management
E Switching off login to your account using the S-PIN
ⓘ Displaying information on the S-PIN
Displaying information to restore the S-PIN

🛈 Verifying the user by setting the S-PIN can be switched on/off in **MENU** > > > *Protect account* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN*.

Restoring S-PIN

You can restore your S-PIN on the Škoda Connect Portal website, or in MyŠkoda application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again in the car as the primary user for MyŠkoda application to function correctly.
› If you are the primary user in more than one vehicle, re-register in each one.

Log out user

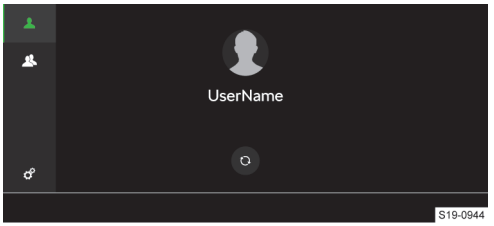
When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed, in which the selected vehicle functions can be activated.

When the time interval expires, the logout screen is switched of and the user is automatically logged off.

Settings

Manage current user

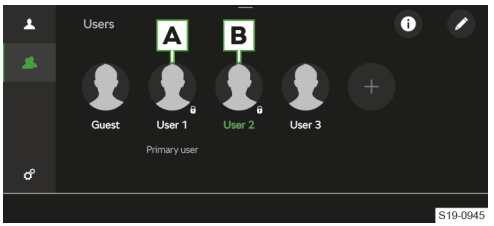
› Tap **MENU** > > .



Sync online account

User management

› Tap **MENU** > > .



A The main user assigned to the vehicle
B Currently logged in user
+ Adding a new user
S-PIN protected user account
Displaying edit mode
ⓘ Displaying additional user management information

How to become the primary user

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Become primary user* > *Become primary user*.
2. Confirm the settings

Deleting a user

1. Tap **MENU** > > > > .
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting the current user account

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Delete active user*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting primary user account from the user management

› Tap **MENU** > > > > > *Delete account*.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > > > *Become primary user* > *Delete primary user* > *Delete account*.

Deleting primary user account and logging out the user in the car

› Tap **MENU** > > > > > *Return*.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > > > *Become primary user* > *Delete primary user* > *Return*.

Deleting all users

Restoring the Infotainment system factory settings deletes all user accounts.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap **MENU** > .
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

🛈 To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the user accounts and delete the primary user account.

Personalisation

Use

The personalisation service allows you to set and store the vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised func-

tions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, the personalised settings are saved in the Škoda ID online user account when the ignition is switched off.

By logging in to the user account in another Škoda vehicle, the customisable functions associated with the user account are set depending on the vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system.

Settings

Activate/deactivate automatic assignment of the vehicle key

If the function is turned on in the settings, the key with which the vehicle was unlocked will be assigned to the current user account when the vehicle is locked.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all personalised functions are set according to the user account assigned to the key.

› To switch **off / on** tap **MENU** > > > *Assign vehicle key automatically* .

If the automatic key assignment function is switched off, the key assignment will also be deleted.

Switching the Personalisation service off/on

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Privacy mode and service management*.
2. Select the **Personalization** service from the displayed list of online services.
3. Switch the service off/on.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Online service management

Use

The following activities can be carried out in service management:

› Set protection of personal data
› Show the list of available services
› Receive information about the status of the services
› Receive information about the validity of the services
› Switch the use of the services on/off

Connection status of online services

Connection status of Škoda Connect online services is indicated by a symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system display.

The following symbols may appear in the status bar:

Connection status of online services

Škoda Connect online services are available
Škoda Connect online services are not available

The set personal data protection level

Maximum privacy mode
Vehicle and user data
Using vehicle location
Sharing vehicle location

Conditions

✓ The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

Show list of online services

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

Show details of services

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions:

› Status of the service
› Reason for the unavailability of the service
› Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is found
› Expiry date of the service's validity
› Switch use of the service on/off

Settings

Enable/disable the service

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Privacy mode and service management*.
2. Select the required service from the displayed list of online services.
3. Enable/disable the required service.

ⓘ Using the service is available for all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Use

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

For the Škoda Connect services, prepaid eSIM data connection can be used.

The data connection can be shared with up to 8 other connected devices via WLAN.

For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, please visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Conditions

- In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
- Škoda Auto accepts no liability for changes in the mobile network over time, e.g. generational replacement of outdated technology.

Operation

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

Displaying Škoda Connect data packages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Data packages*.

The following information is displayed in the overview:

- Overview of purchased packages
- Data package usage
- Package validity period

A data package expires when it is completely exhausted or when the validity period expires.

Settings

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

Switching on/off the Škoda Connect data connection services

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)*.

Online system update

Use

The online update enables a software update.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

More information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles can be found on the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

ⓘ If the approval for the update is postponed, the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the option to start the update will be offered once again.

Operation

Downloading updates

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Follow the instructions and information shown on the Infotainment system display.
3. Confirm the download in the Infotainment system.

You can interrupt the download at any time. The download will resume automatically when the ignition is switched on again.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size and the type of update.

Installing the update

⚠ WARNING

Some control units, including the connectivity unit (OCU), may not function during installation.
In this case, emergency calls, automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and Škoda Connect services are not available.

› Install the update when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment system display.

   You can leave the vehicle as the installation will continue.

4. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system when the installation is complete or when you return to the vehicle.
5. Check the Infotainment system display for a message indicating successful installation.

ⓘ The emergency call indicator light is off during installation.

ⓘ If the installation was successful, the emergency call indicator light is green.

Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- ✓ The ignition and the Infotainment system are switched off.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services have been activated in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ *Maximum privacy mode* is not set in the vehicle.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

- › A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
- › The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
- › The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Use

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

- › Order new Škoda Connect features and services
- › Renew the purchased Škoda Connect features and services
- › Buy data packages

  Data packages can also be used by devices connected via WLAN.

  For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, please visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the Škoda Connect Shop website.

https://shop.skoda-connect.com

Overview

1. Tap **MENU** > 🛒.
2. Select the desired function or service from the displayed list.

Conditions

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of Škoda Connect services.

Restrictions

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information calls

Use

You can use the information call in case of problems with Škoda Connect services or to obtain information about Škoda products and services.

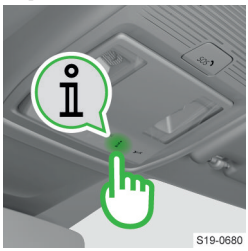
Tap the ⓘ button to contact the local hotline.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The personal data protection level is not set to *Maximum privacy*.

  To send vehicle location information, the privacy level must be set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Operation



› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown calls

Use

Breakdown call can be used in case of the vehicle breakdown.

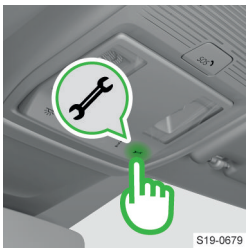
Tap the 🔧 button to contact the Škoda assist service. The vehicle also sends information about the status and position of the vehicle.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The personal data protection level is not set to *Maximum privacy*.

  To send vehicle location information, the privacy level must be set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Operation



› Press the 🔧 button.

Planning a service visit

Use

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ A service partner is selected on the Škoda Connect Portal or in MyŠkoda application, and Service appointment scheduling is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The personal data protection level is not set to *Maximum privacy*.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Vehicle health card

Use

The vehicle's health card function allows you to monitor the status of your vehicle online.

The service is available in the MyŠkoda application.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service requests.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Škoda Connect services

Use

Remote access to the vehicle

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

› Locking and unlocking
› Last parking position
› Vehicle status

Infotainment Online

The service package Infotainment Online extends infotainment to include online services.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

› Online target import
› Online traffic information.
› Online System Update

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Start

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

✓ Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with manual gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
4. Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with automatic gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Press the starter button.

ⓘ In vehicles with diesel engines, the indicator light lights up after the ignition is switched on - Diesel preheating system on. The engine starts after the following goes out .

Stopping the engine

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, e.g. when towing, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine

› Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
3. If the engine does not start, use the jump start leads with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle » page 205 or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message about the immobiliser

1. Use the other vehicle key.
2. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key



illuminated

1. Put the key into the front cup holder
2. Press the starter button.
3. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

› Hold the starter button or press it twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan may continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine stops. This is not a fault.

The engine makes noises after a cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a fault.

START-STOP

Use

The START-STOP decreases emissions of CO_2 and harmful emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determines that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when the gear lever is moved into the neutral position, and when the clutch pedal is released.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is depressed and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is depressed. If Auto Hold is deactivated, the system will start the engine when the brake pedal is released.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

Ⓐ – the engine is turned off by the START-STOP system

Ⓐ – the engine is not turned off by the START-STOP system because the conditions of the function have not been met

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Some conditions are determined by the state of the car's systems and cannot be influenced or recognized. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions:

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was more than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

› Upon start-up of engine.

› By selecting the driving mode Eco *» page 164, Operation*.

Deactivating/activating the system

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment system.

You can deactivate or activate the function in the menu displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine

› Shift into a higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

› Depress the clutch pedal fully.

› Remove your hand from the gear lever once you have changed gear.

Engaging reverse gear

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
4. Push the gear lever down.
5. Move it fully to the left.
6. Wait for a moment.
7. Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Automatic gearbox modes

Selecting the automatic transmission mode

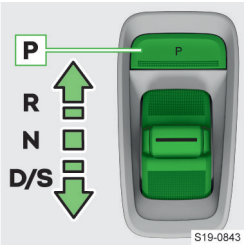
› To change the automatic transmission mode, move the selector lever forwards or backwards.

The selector will then return to the default position.

› To select the **P** mode, press the P button.

ⓘ The selector can be moved forward or backward through two positions. This allows you, for example, to select the **D/S** mode directly from the **R** mode and vice versa.

The selected mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.



P **Parked vehicle**

The drive wheels are locked.

The **P** mode can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**

The **R** mode can be selected when the speed is lower than 10 km/h.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive/sports program**

In the **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in the **D** mode.

To select between **D** and **S**, move the selector lever backwards.

ⓘ To select the **D**, **S** and **R** modes, you must first start the engine. Only the **N** mode can be selected with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on. This can be useful, for example, when towing the car or at the car wash.

Unlocking the automatic gearbox from the P mode

illuminated – automatic transmission is in the **P** mode

› Depress the brake pedal and select the desired mode.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the vehicle moving forwards without warning.

› If the selected mode is **D**, **S**, **R** or **N**, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Start the engine.
3. Select the required mode with the selector.
4. Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal

Maximum acceleration when driving (Kick-down)

› Depress the accelerator pedal fully.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selected mode **D/S** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Select the **P** mode.
4. Turn off the engine.

ⓘ When the engine is switched off in the **D**, **S** or **R** mode, or the **P** mode is automatically selected.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to the neutral position.

ⓘ In vehicles with the e-TEC drive, the engine can also be switched off at speeds of 10–160 km/h. Ⓐ will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral:

- ✓ **D** mode is selected.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is depressed.
- ✓ The driving speed is 20 – 130 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories must be plugged into the towing bracket socket.

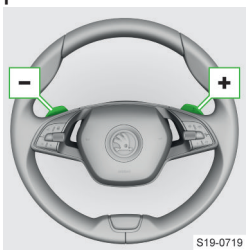
Maximum acceleration during starting (Launch-control)

This function allows maximum acceleration during launching.

1. Select the **S** mode or manual shift.
2. Deactivate ASR » *page 171*.
3. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
4. Depress the accelerator pedal all the way down.
5. Release the brake pedal.

   The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



− Change down a gear

\+ Change up a gear

› To **turn on**, press the − button, or +.

› To **turn off**, keep the + button pressed down, or select another mode.

ⓘ If you don't use one of the buttons for a certain period of time in the **D** mode, manual shifting is switched off automatically.
The manual shift does not turn off automatically when in **S** mode.

If there is a risk of over-revving

› The gearbox automatically changes up a gear.

› The transmission prevents downshifting.

Troubleshooting

It is not possible to set the automatic transmission mode in the usual way

› Manually unblock the selector lever » page 163.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox overheating

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
2. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
3. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Gearbox malfunction

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox in emergency mode

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating a gearbox malfunction

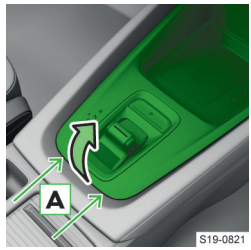
› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Recovering a stranded vehicle

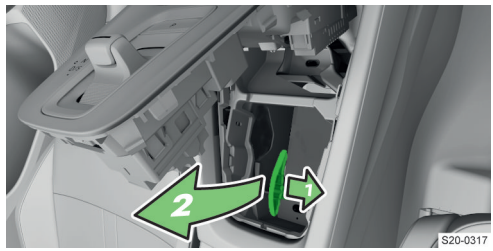
1. If possible, remove the obstacle, e.g. snow.
2. Put underneath the wheels of the driven axle e.g. rubber mats.
3. At low engine speed, move the selector lever smoothly between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will start to rock and be easier to free.

Manually releasing an automatic gearbox.

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool into the gap at A in the location of the arrows.
› Carefully release and lift the gear shift cover.
› Remove the foam.



› Release the pull bar in the direction of arrow 1.
› Pull out the pull bar in the direction of arrow 2 all the way.

Driving modes

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

The selected driving mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Eco mode

The Eco driving mode is suitable for a relaxed driving style and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

The Comfort driving mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long journeys on the motorway.

Normal mode

The Normal driving mode is suitable for normal driving style.

Sport mode

The Sport driving mode is suitable for sport driving style.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows you to individually adjust some of the vehicle's systems.

Offroad mode

The Offroad mode is suitable for driving on unpaved roads. Even with Offroad mode engaged, your vehicle is still not a classic off-road vehicle.

When the Offroad mode is on, the messages , and illuminate in the instrument cluster.

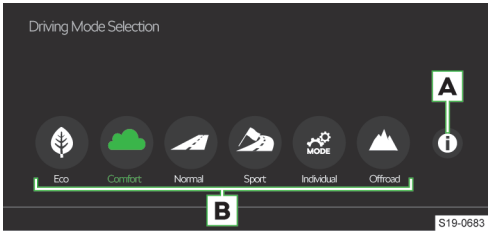
Operation

Selecting driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

The Infotainment system will display the driving mode menu.

Press repeatedly the MODE button to close the menu.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode / System settings when Individual mode is selected.

B Driving modes menu

› Press the corresponding B button.

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Troubleshooting

Adaptive chassis fault DCC

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Follow the gear changing recommendation on the instrument cluster display.
› Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
› Do not allow the engine to idle for long periods.
› Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 216.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

A more fuel-efficient driving status

In the following situations, fuel consumption is slightly reduced.

› Active cylinder management has temporarily deactivated some engine cylinders (applies to some engine types).
› A vehicle with an automatic transmission idles.

Driving with a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution!

ⓘ NOTICE

Frequent trailer journeys put excessive strain on the vehicle, so have it checked even between service checks.

Recommendations for driving with a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure of the vehicle for full load operation.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights of the vehicle and the combination as stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (e.g. vehicle registration document, COC document) and on the type plate.
› When driving with a trailer, the actual load of the vehicle and the load distribution in the trailer must be taken into account. A trailer attachment increases the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle and may reduce the weight of the payload.
› Adjust the headlight inclination to match the load on the vehicle. The front of the vehicle with the trailer attached may lift and the lights may dazzle other road users.
› Do not exceed the speed of **100 km/h**.
› If the trailer swerves sideways, reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal. Do not attempt to straighten the vehicle combination by accelerating.
› If you do not have a clear view of the traffic behind the trailer, have additional rear-view mirrors fitted.
› Brake in time. First lightly brake the trailer with the trailer brake, then steadily increase the pressure on the brake pedal. This will eliminate impacts caused by locked trailer wheels when braking.
› Before descending, downshift to take advantage of the engine's braking power.

Load distribution in the vehicle combination

› Secure heavy objects against shifting, preferably close to the trailer axle.

› Carry small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible unbraked trailer weight (kg)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	manual	690	700
	automatic	710	710
1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	670	670
1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	680	690/710 [a)]
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	manual	650	650
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	manual	650	650
	automatic	660	670
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	manual	670	670/690 [a)]
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	automatic	720	720
	automatic 4x4	750	750
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	automatic	640	650
2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR	manual	710	720/740 [a)]
	automatic	710	720
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	manual	680	690
	automatic	700	700
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	manual	710	720
	automatic	730	730
	automatic 4x4	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic 4x4	750	750

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a)]	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	manual	1400	1400
	automatic	1400	1400
1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	1300	1300
1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	1500	1500
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	manual	1300	1300
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1500	1500
	automatic	1500	1500

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a]	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1500	1500
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	automatic	1600	1600
	automatic 4x4	1700	1700
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	automatic	1200	1200
2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR	manual	1500	1500
	automatic	1500	1500
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	manual	1600	1600
	automatic	1600	1600
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	manual	1600	1600
	automatic	1600	1600
	automatic 4x4	2000	2000
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic 4x4	2000	2000

[a] On gradients up to 12 %.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible unbraked trailer weight (kg)	
		Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	manual	740	750
	automatic	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic	750	750
	automatic 4x4	750	750

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a]	
		Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	manual	1600	1600
	automatic	1600	1600
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic	1600	1600
	automatic 4x4	2000	2000

[a] On gradients up to 12 %.

Tow eye and towing

Conditions for towing

- ✓ Technical condition of the vehicle allows towing.
- ✓ Ignition is on.
- ✓ The gear lever is in neutral or the selector lever is in **N**.

Restrictions

› Towing speed up to 50 km/h
› Towing distance up to 50 km

Towing eye

Removing the front cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



1. Screw in the towing eye.
2. Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
3. Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

⚠ WARNING

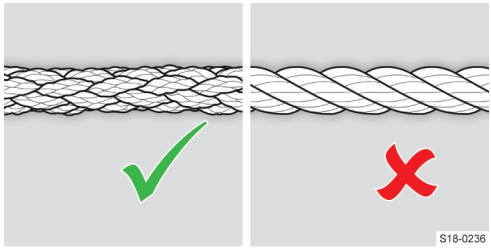
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering are not operational. The steering lock may also engage.

› If the engine cannot be started,switch on the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.

› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



⚠ NOTICE

› Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

› If the gearbox no longer contains oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.

› Vehicles with an automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› On the front towing eye

› On the rear towing eye

› On the tow bar fitted from the factory

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

1. Drive slowly and smoothly.
2. Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Move the gear lever to neutral or the selector lever to the **N** position.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!

› When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of the brakes overheating!

› Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.

› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Engine off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, do not continue.
2. Do not refill.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low brake fluid is indicated by the instrument cluster illuminating (!). However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the **MIN** mark, there may be a leak in the brake system.

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. This standard meets the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of brake failure!

If the brake fluid replacement interval is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

(!) illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

(!) illuminates together with (ABS)

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

ⓘ Prolonged parking and low brake loads contribute to corrosion on the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads.

The brake booster does not work when the engine is off

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Button lock hazard!

› The finger recess in front of the (P) button must remain empty.

Manual activation



› Pull the (P) button and hold it.

The following symbols will light up:

› (P) in the button
› (P) In the instrument cluster

Automatic activation after ignition has been switched off

On vehicles with manual transmission, the parking brake will automatically engage after the ignition is switched off.

The function is activated or deactivated in the following way in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Exterior*.
2. Select the screen with the *Brakes* item by swiping with your finger.
3. Select the *Braking* item and activate or deactivate the feature.

(!) NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Switch off the parking brake in situations where the vehicle needs to move freely.

Automatic deactivation

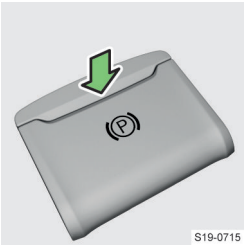
The parking brake is automatically switched off when you drive off.

If you want to prevent it from switching off automatically, e.g. when starting uphill, hold the (P) button down.

Conditions for automatic deactivation

✓ The driver's door is closed, in some cases the driver's seat belt must also be fastened

Switching off manually



› With the ignition switched on, depress the brake pedal and simultaneously press the Ⓟ button.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

Ⓟ illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the 12-volt vehicle battery to a power source, such as the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on



› Pull the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off

› Release the button Ⓟ.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle

With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. AUTO HOLD lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Automatic protection from the parking brake

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The engine is running or has been switched off by the START-STOP system.
✓ Auto Hold is activated.
✓ The automatic transmission N mode is not selected.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› Press the Ⓐ button.

Activation is signalled by lighting up the symbol Ⓐ in the button.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Deactivate Auto Hold before entering a car wash where free movement of the vehicle is required.

48 V battery

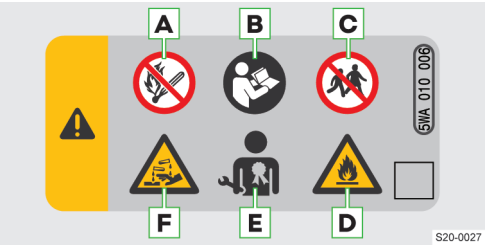
Use

Depending on vehicle equipment, a 48-volt battery may be included.

The 48-volt battery stores the electrical energy generated during regenerative braking.,

The stored electrical energy is then used to start the engine, to provide short-term acceleration assistance and to power the vehicle's appliances.

What you should be mindful of



Warning sign on the vehicle battery

- **A** Do not expose the vehicle battery to fire, sparks or open flames.
- **B** Further information can be found in the Operating Manual.
- **C** Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- **D** Use caution when handling flammable or combustible materials.
- **E** Have work on the vehicle battery carried out by qualified service technicians.
- **F** If the vehicle battery is damaged, avoid contact with leaking liquids.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not perform any work on the vehicle battery.
- This work may only be carried out by qualified service technicians.
- The vehicle battery must not come into contact with any liquids.

Overview

The 48V system and accumulator in the vehicle consist of the following components:

- Accumulator
- Power electronics
- Purple cables and connectors

Troubleshooting

Low battery charge of the 48V battery

Applies to vehicles e-TEC.

or ⚠illuminates

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine and ignition.
3. Restart the engine, but do not start the vehicle.

The warning light will turn yellow when the engine is started:

4. Keep the vehicle stationary until the warning light goes out.
5. If the yellow warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The warning light will turn red after starting:

6. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

or ⚠illuminates

1. Start the engine, but do not start the vehicle.
2. Keep the vehicle stationary until the warning light goes out.
3. If the warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver Assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)

ESC helps stabilise the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC is engaged

ESC Sport

ESC Sport enables a more sporty driving style.

 Illuminated – activated ESC Sport

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps stabilise the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when they start spinning.

 flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is signalled by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)

MSR helps maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels on the driven axle lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the engine braking effect and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps stabilise the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with varying grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes the spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps keep the vehicle turning by effectively braking the wheels on the inside of the turn.

Active steering assist (DSR)

DSR helps stabilise the vehicle in a limit situation by indicating to the driver where to turn the steering wheel by a pulse to the steering wheel.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

The HHC system helps with hill starts by braking the vehicle for approximately 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5 %.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB helps decelerate and stabilise the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Following a front, side and rear collision of a certain force.
- ✓ The speed at the time of impact exceeded 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

TSA helps stabilize the trailer combination If the trailer combination starts to sway, the TSA stabilises it by braking individual wheels of the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The towing device is supplied from the factory or purchased from the Škoda Genuine Equipment range.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the towing bracket socket.
- ✓ The ASR is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Electromechanical brake booster (eBKV)

eBKV makes it easier to depress the brake pedal.

When the ignition is switched off, the eBKV function is limited or unavailable.

ⓘ If the vehicle is decelerated using an assistance system, pulsating movements of the brake pedal can occur.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment system.

You can deactivate or activate the function in the menu displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Deactivating ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

› Driving with snow chains.
› Driving in deep snow or on very soft ground.
› Starting up a vehicle that is stuck.

Activation/deactivation of ESC Sport

› Press the SET button under the Infotainment system.

You can deactivate or activate the function in the menu displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction, ESC or ASR switched off by the system

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ABS malfunction

ABS illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

illuminates together with ABS

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Electromechanical brake booster fault

illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Malfunction of the all-wheel drive

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine, wait about 10 minutes and start again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle in front of you and warns you if you do not keep a safe distance. In an emergency situation, it helps to avoid a collision by braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – failure to keep a safe distance

illuminated – warning if there is a risk of collision

Automatic braking when there is a risk of collision

When there is a risk of colision, will illuminate as a warning. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

At speeds up to 30 km/h, the vehicle will start braking without warning.

Automatic braking can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.

The brake system pressure is increased during automatic braking. The brake pedal cannot be depressed within its normal range.

Operating conditions

✓ ASR is activated.
✓ The driving speed is over 5 km/h.

Function restriction

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Front Assist does not react to vehicles moving across the road.
It has a limited response to vehicles moving in the opposite direction.
If the vehicle is approaching an obstacle at a very high speed, the system's response may be delayed.

Limitation or unavailability of the function

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› Approximately 30 seconds after staring (indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated)
› When negotiating a steep curve
› During ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the *Front Assist* item.

Activation/deactivation and settings in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

- *Active* – activation/deactivation of Front Assist
- *Display distance warning* – activating/deactivating the display of distance warning
- *Avoidance support* – when activated, the system can help avoid an obstacle by braking and assisting steering control.
- *Turning brake function* – when activated, the system can apply the brakes at low speeds when turning to avoid collision with oncoming traffic.

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster display

illuminated

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of Front Assist

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the Front Assist system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
4. If the brake lights are working and the Front Assist system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

There has been an unfounded warning or system intervention

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. If the system still does not work properly, deactivate the Front Assist system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-front-assist

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up – danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h

The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-85 km/h

The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 5-85 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter regulates the maximum speed of the vehicle to a set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, apply the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

flashing– the set limit is exceeded

When cruise control starts, the set speed limit is displayed.

Applies to the analog instrument cluster.

Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

illuminated together with – the limiter is regulating the speed of the vehicle

When the cruise control starts the is highlighted, and the set speed is displayed.

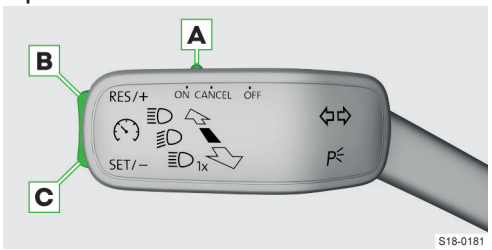
flashing– the set limit is exceeded

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.

Operation

Option without cruise control



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

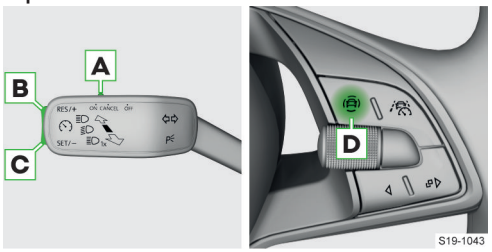
OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming control [1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

Option with cruise control



A **ON** Activating cruise control (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter)

To **activate the speed limiter**, press the **D** button and select the *Limiter* item on the instrument cluster display.

OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming control [1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

D Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

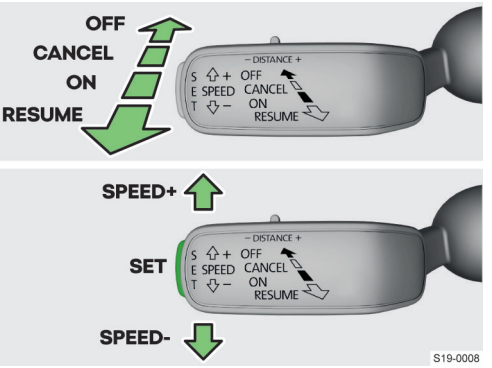
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

Changing the speed limit using the B button and C

Pressing in **1 km/h** increments

Holding in **10 km/h** increments

Option with ACC



ON Activating ACC (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the speed limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and select the item *Limiting speed* on the instrument cluster display.

RESUME Resuming control [1] / Increasing the limit in 1 km/h increments (spring-loaded position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter fault

! **LIM** illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Cruise control system

What you should be mindful of

Do not use CCS in the following cases:

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the need to depress the accelerator pedal.

However, this depends on the vehicle's engine output and braking power.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally

- Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

illuminated – cruise control is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Applies to the analog instrument cluster.

illuminated – cruise control is active

illuminated together with – the limiter is regulating the speed of the vehicle

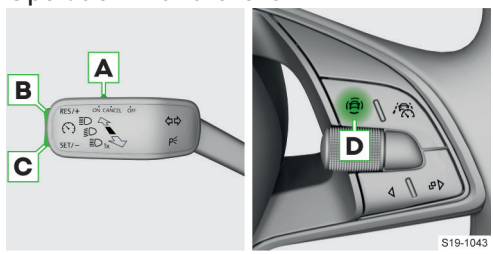
When cruise control is started, the set speed is highlighted and displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 20 km/h.

Operation

Operation with the lever



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming the cruise control [1] / Increasing speed limit

C **SET/-** Starting the cruise control with current speed / Reducing speed limit

D Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Temporary acceleration

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

- After the brake pedal is depressed
- After ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system fault

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the cruise control system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
3. If the brake lights are working and the cruise control system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

What you should be mindful of

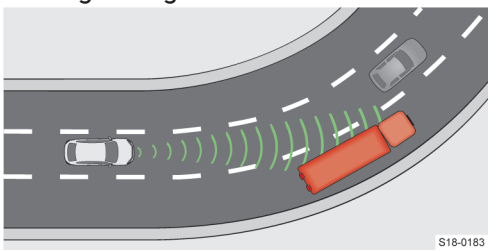
Do not use the ACC system in the following cases:

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

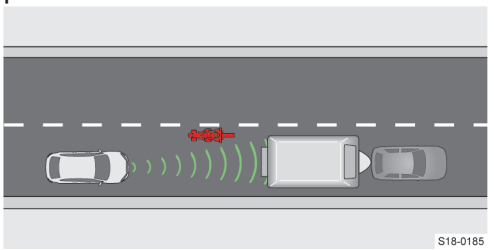
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING
› In the following situations, increase your attention and be prepared to intervene.

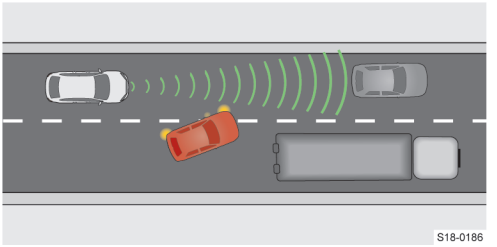
Regulating the speed according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane
If your vehicle is travelling faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side at speeds above 80 km/h, your vehicle's speed may be regulated according to this vehicle.

Passing through a corner

S18-0183

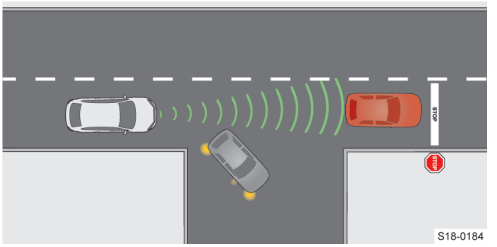
A vehicle in the adjacent lane may enter the monitored area when going around a corner. Your vehicle's speed will be regulated according to this car.

Narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel

S18-0185

ACC will only detect a narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel in the adjacent lane when it enters the monitoring area.

Other vehicles changing lanes

S18-0186

The ACC system may not be able to detect in time a vehicle that changes lanes just in front of you.

A stationary vehicle

S18-0184

If a vehicle in front of you turns and another vehicle is in front of that vehicle, the ACC system **may not react** to this stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special loads or special extensions
Cargo or extensions that protrude outside the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC system.

Functionality
ACC speed control
ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING
ACC does not react to objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ⓘ ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC (Predictive adaptive cruise control)
pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts speed according to detected speed limits and road conditions, such as curves, junctions or roundabouts.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING
pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range
ACC allows you to adjust the speed according to the car's equipment within a range of 30– 210 km/h.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic transmission at a speed lower than 30 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance
You can set the distance to the car in front of you in five different levels.

⚠ WARNING
› Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.
› Always set a greater distance when visibility is reduced.

START-STOP system with manual gearbox
A vehicle with manual gearbox can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again.

› When stopping, move the shift lever to the neutral position.

Or:

› Depress the brake pedal.

If the stop is longer, the control is interrupted.

› To restore control, start up.

Depressing the brake pedal will interrupt control.

START-STOP system with automatic gearbox
A vehicle with an automatic gearbox can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again. If the stop is longer, the control is interrupted.

› Check the roadway and be prepared to brake before each start.

To restore control:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Put the selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› *Applies to vehicles with hand detection on the steering wheel:* take hold of the steering wheel again.

Depressing the brake pedal will interrupt control.

Overtaking
If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster display
illuminated – ACC is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently
› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

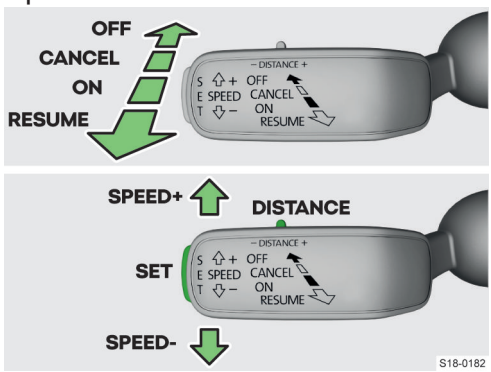
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation

Operation with the lever



ON	Activating ACC (no cruise control is in operation)
RESUME	Starting or resuming control / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)
CANCEL	Interrupting control (sprung position)
OFF	ACC deactivation
SPEED +	Increasing the speed in 10 km/h steps
SPEED –	Decreasing the speed in 10 km/h steps

DISTANCE Setting the distance level

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Starting the current speed control

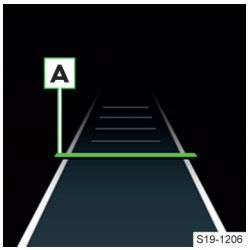
› Tap **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Setting the distance level

› Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The display will show A line indicating change of distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed
› When the clutch pedal is depressed for a long time
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation

Resuming the control

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

› *Driving profile:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » page 164)
› *Last selected distance* – turning on/off of the last selected distance level
› *Distance:* – setting the default distance from the vehicle in front of you
› *Prediction of the course of the journey* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
› *Prediction of the speed limit* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of ACC

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the ACC system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
3. If the brake lights are working and the ACC system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

ACC - setting
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-acc

Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane

Use

Lane Assist helps keeping the vehicle in the lane. It is guided by demarcation lines, which may be boundary lines, road edges or objects such as kerbs or traffic cones.

The system is designed primarily for driving on the motorway

Functionality

If the vehicle approaches the demarcation line, the system will turn the steering wheel in the direction away from the demarcation line. The steering intervention can be manually corrected.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: The system will not intervene when changing lanes with the turn signal on.

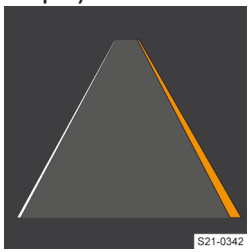
Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle by means of the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing. The system will intervene even if the indicator light is on.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated– the system is activated and prepared to intervene

illuminated – the system is intervening

Display view



Highlighted right bar: the system intervenes when the vehicle is approaching the demarcation line on the right.

Steering wheel vibration warning

The steering wheel vibrates in the following situations:

- The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.
- *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on.
- *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing, the steering wheel will vibrate even if the indicator light is on.
- If the steering wheel vibrates, correct the steering control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on (applies only to some countries).

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the *Lane Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the sensor.
2. Switch off the engine and restart it after a while.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Lane Assist Lane Assist

Lane Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-lane-assist

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed.

On vehicles with Side Assist and Parking Assist, it also helps you change lanes.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses Lane Assist, ACC and Side Assist functions (depending on vehicle equipment).

Travel Assist is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.
› Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress

Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress

illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

If you do not respond to the warning, the system will automatically shut down.

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Assisted lane change

Applies to vehicles with Side Assist and Parking Assist.

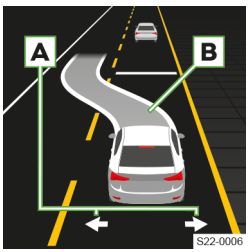
This function allows you to automatically change lanes by moving the turn signal lever to the spring-loaded position.

The function is designed for driving on motorways.

To activate the function, Travel Assist must be reactivated when driving on the motorway.

Display view

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.



A White arrows – the Assisted Lane Change function is activated.

B Lane marked during the overtaking manoeuvre.

If the system determines that it is safe to change lanes, the adjacent lane will be highlighted on the display.

› Move the direction indicator lever to the sprung position. The vehicle will change lanes.

Operating conditions

Applies to vehicles without the Assisted Lane Change function.

✓ ACC is activated.
✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.
✓ On a vehicle with manual gears, the driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Applies to vehicles with the Assisted Lane Change function.

✓ ACC is activated.
✓ Side Assist is activated.
✓ The Assisted Lane Change function is activated.
✓ The vehicle is travelling on the motorway.
✓ Travel Assist has been activated or reactivated when driving on the motorway.
✓ The driving speed is 90 – 210 km/h.
✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The Travel Assist system is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

In addition to these limitations, observe the ACC limitations » *page 175*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Activation/deactivation of Assisted lane change

The function can be activated/deactivated only in the Infotainment system menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assist systems* > .

Switching between Travel Assist and ACC

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **CANCEL** position or **OFF** » *page 177*.

Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » *page 179* and ACC » *page 178*.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

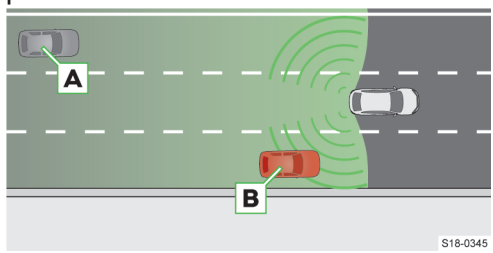
The system monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching car by means of a warning light ■ in the external mirror housing on the side where the car is detected.

⚠ WARNING

In strong sunlight, the indicator light may be hard to see.

Driving situations in which the system provides alerts



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle **A**. The faster the **A** vehicle is approaching, the sooner the warning light starts to alert.

The **B** vehicle is being overtaken by your vehicle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h higher. The warning light does not indicate if you are overtaking faster than this.

The indicator light

■ **illuminated** – there is another vehicle behind you

■ **flashing** – there is another vehicle behind you and on the same side, the direction light is on.

On vehicles with the Lane Assist system, the warning light also flashes if your vehicle crosses the line of demarcation towards the approaching vehicle. The system will also vibrate the steering wheel.

As a pre-condition, the Lane Assist system must be activated and the line of demarcation between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system does not detect the lane width. Therefore, in the following cases, for example, it may warn you of a vehicle in a further lane:

› A vehicle is driving on a roadway with narrow lanes or on the edge of the lane.

› The vehicle is negotiating a bend.

The system may warn of objects along the road, such as high barriers or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system may not warn of a vehicle or may warn incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.

› The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve or roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display
In the menu *Assist systems*.

In Infotainment
In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Side Assist system malfunction
illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Lane change system Side Assist
Side Assist - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-side-assist

Traffic Sign Recognition

Usage
The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING
The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:
- Traffic signs in the traveled route section
- A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Displayed road signs
- Speed limits
- Overtaking prohibited
- Driving bans – one-way traffic
- Danger sign
- Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer
If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits
If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display


Speed units
The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction
The system function may be restricted in the following cases:
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is moving at high speed.
- The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting
In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

- *Traffic sign recognition*
  - *Speeding alert:* – setting an alert when speeding
  - *Alert at more than*– increasing the speed limit for the speeding warning
  - *Include trailer* – deactivating/activating the display of traffic signs valid for driving with a trailer
  - *Maximum speed for trailer* – setting maximum speed for driving with a trailer

Video – Dynamic Road Sign Display
Dynamic Road Sign Display – how it works
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-traffic-sign-recognition

Crew Protect Assist

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, the following safety measures are activated:

› Hazard warning lights start flashing.
› Open windows begin to close to a small gap.
› Sliding/tilting roof starts to close.
› The front seat belts are pulled against the body.

ⓘ The system's response depends on the selected driving mode.

Indication of system activation on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – the system is intervening

Risk of frontal collision

Applies to vehicles with Front Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent risk of a frontal collision.

Risk of rear-end collision

Applies to vehicles with Side Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent rear-end collision risk.

Danger if the driver is not active

Applies to vehicles with Emergency Assist system.

The system will activate safety measures if it assesses an imminent danger when the driver is inactive.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› When deactivating the ASR or activating the ESC Sport
› When reversing
› If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
› If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system
› If there is a malfunction or restriction of the lane change assist system Side Assist
› If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Emergency Assist emergency assist systems

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Proactive passenger protection fault

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection

Functionality

The Fatigue detection assistant evaluates the vehicle's handling. If it detects signs of driver fatigue, it will recommend a break and the message ☕ will light up on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not warn if you fall into a microsleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

› Stopping and switching off the ignition
› Stopping, unbuckling the seat belt and opening the driver's door
› Stopping for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may recommend a break incorrectly.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is 60 – 200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assist systems* > ☕ menu.

Video - Fatigue detection Driver Alert

Driver Alert - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-octavia4-driver-alert

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

› An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
› If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
› After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be initiated.

Interruption of automatic braking

› By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal
› By actively steering

Operating conditions

✓ Assist system for emergency situations is activated.
✓ Lane Assist or Travel Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.

Settings

Automatic activation

The Assistant is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Emergency Assist malfunction

SOS illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Hill descent assistant

Functionality

Hill descent assist helps maintain a constant speed when driving downhill by automatically braking.

The system also works when idling or in reverse.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
For physical reasons, the system is not able to function properly on slippery surfaces such as ice, mud, etc.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated in grey – the system is activated

illuminated in white – the system is intervening

Speed change

The vehicle speed can be changed by depressing the brake or accelerator pedal. When the pedal is released, the assistant maintains the current speed.

Operating conditions

✓ The engine is running.
✓ The Offroad mode is activated.
✓ The gradient is at least 10 %.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is depressed.
✓ Driving speed is max. 30 km/h.

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the Offroad mode is activated.

Automatic recuperation assistant Eco Assist

Usage

Eco Assist supports an economical driving style with the help of instructions in the display of the instrument cluster.

Functionality

If the system evaluates a possible improvement in fuel economy, the following information will be displayed in the instrument cluster:

› A symbol of an upcoming event, e.g. speed limit, intersection, etc.
› – recommendation to release the accelerator pedal

When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle adjusts its speed and power regeneration to the current situation.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic sign recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

Function restriction

The function cannot be used in the following cases:

› If the automatic distance control (ACC) is activated
› If the cruise control system is activated
› If the Sport driving mode is selected

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Parking Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system display and an acoustic signal sounds.

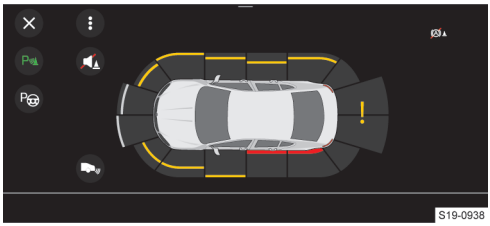
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic braking can be activated and deactivated on the Infotainment system display.

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



- Switching off/on the audible alarm
- One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking
- Park steering assistant
- Setting up some parking assist systems
- System fault
- Switching to reversing camera view

- Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres
- Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres
- Obstacle outside the driving path

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing device socket.

Switching on/off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic activation when driving forward

When approaching an obstacle at speeds below 10 km/h.

Automatic braking is not activated during automatic activation.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic deactivation

The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system may not issue an obstacle warning, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The detected obstacles moving.
› Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
› The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

To view the system setting menu, do the following:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment > ⚙ on the Infotainment display.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment > ⋮ > ⚙ on the Infotainment system display.

Or:

› Engage reverse gear > tap ⋮ > ⚙ on the Infotainment system display.

Troubleshooting

After switching on, the alarm sounds for 3 seconds, but there is no obstacle in the vicinity of the vehicle

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas appear on the Infotainment system display

1. Move the vehicle forward or backward a few metres.
2. If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

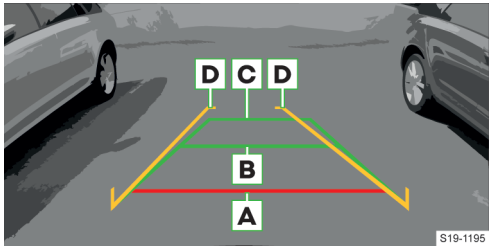
Functionality

When reversing, the Infotainment display will show the area behind the vehicle with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically together with the washing of the rear window or with the aid of the functional surface in the Infotainment screen.

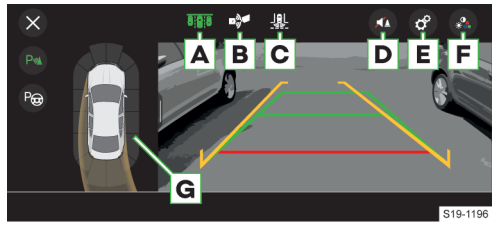
Orientation lines and function surfaces

Orientation lines



- **A** Distance about 40 cm
- **B** Distance about 100 cm
- **C** Distance about 200 cm
- **D** The lines show the driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel rotation. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **C** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **D** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **E** Setting the parking aid system
- **F** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image

  Function area for the rear camera washer
- **G** Parking aid preview

Full parking aid display can be activated by tapping the preview.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

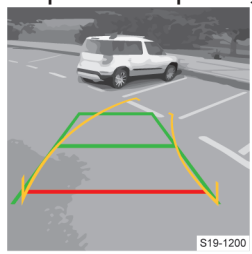
Switching on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment > P on the Infotainment display.

Perpendicular parking mode



1. Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
2. Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking gap.
3. Stop at the latest when the red line reaches the rear boundary (e.g. kerb).

Manoeuvring to the trailer mode

On a vehicle with a factory fitted towing device, this mode helps to guide the vehicle towards the trailer's

draw bar. The display shows the track line for guiding to the trailer.

Rear view mode

The display shows the area behind the vehicle in a wide-angle view.

Switching off the system

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Tap ✕ on the Infotainment system display.

Or:

› In vehicles with automatic gearbox, select the P mode.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen, including narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

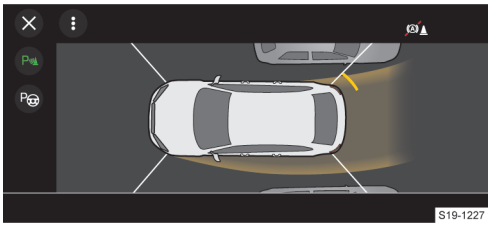
Area View, Top View

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

Overview

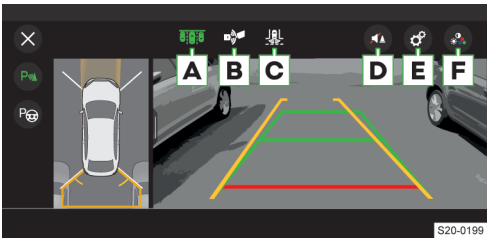
Overall view



Selecting the view

Select the view by touching the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette on the Infotainment system display. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the display.

Rear camera view



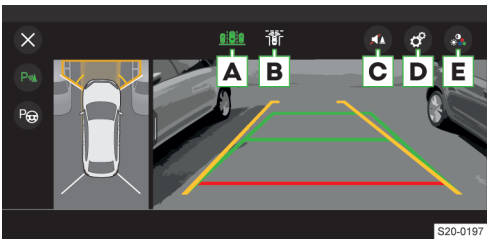
The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Manoeuvring to the trailer mode
- **C** Rear view monitoring mode behind the vehicle (wide-angle view)
- **D** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **E** Setting the parking aid system
- **F** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image

  Function area for the rear camera washer

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically together with the washing of the rear window or with the aid of the functional surface in the Infotainment screen.

Front camera view

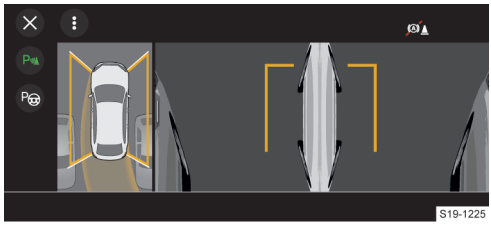


The layout of the function buttons may vary slightly depending on the type of Infotainment system.

- **A** Perpendicular parking mode
- **B** Front view mode (wide-angle view)
- **C** Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on
- **D** Setting the parking aid system
- **E** Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the image

  Function area for the rear camera washer

Side camera view



Left and right-hand side.

The yellow line is displayed approximately 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.

Selecting the view

› Tap the area next to, in front of or behind the silhouette of the vehicle in the Infotainment system. The selected area is outlined in yellow on the display.

Switching off

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Or:

› Tap X on the Infotainment system display.

Or:

› In vehicles with automatic gearbox, select the P mode.

Automatic deactivation

The system switches off automatically when the driving speed is above 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

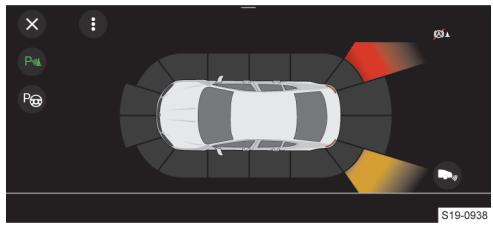


Rear Traffic Alert warns you of approaching vehicles when reversing.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

System signalling

A graphic warning will be displayed on the Infotainment system screen when a vehicle is detected approaching in the area behind your vehicle. A continuous audible signal sounds when reversing.



- ■ Vehicle in collision zone – risk of collision!
- ■ Vehicle approaching

Operating conditions

- ✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing device socket.

Function restriction

The Rear Traffic Alert function may be limited in adverse weather conditions.

Settings

To view the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following:

1. Press the P button under the Infotainment > on the Infotainment display.
2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear › tap ⋮ › ⚙ on the Infotainment system display.
2. Select the Rear Traffic Alert.

Troubleshooting

Rear Traffic Alert malfunction

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Exit warning

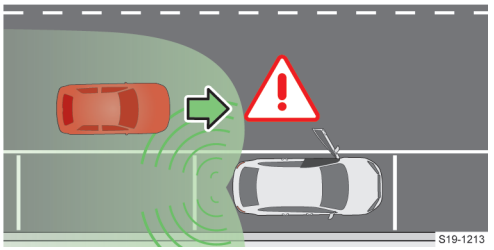
Usage

The assist system warns when opening the door in front of approaching objects, in order to avoid a possible collision.

Functionality

The assist system monitors the area beside and behind the vehicle up to a distance of approximately 35 m.

Situation in which a system warning occurs



Warning in the event of an impending collision

› The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will flicker and then light up.
› A warning signal sounds.

Warning in the event there is no immediate danger of collision

› The indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side upon which the object was detected will light up.

Requirements

✓ The vehicle does not move.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The speed of the approaching object is faster than 2 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the assistant will remain active for about 3 minutes.

Restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an approaching object, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The field of vision of the sensors is limited by an obstacle.
› A very fast approaching object.

Settings

To display the system activation/deactivation menu, do the following:

1. Press the Ⓟ button under the Infotainment › ⚙ on the Infotainment display.
2. Select the item for Warning assistance when leaving the vehicle.

Or:

1. Engage reverse gear › tap ⋮ › ⚙ on the Infotainment system display.
2. Select the item for Warning assistance when leaving the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of the Vehicle Exit Warning Assistant

illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display and on the Infotainment screen.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Switching on/off

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the Infotainment system display lights up.

Selecting the parking side

The system automatically searches for a parking space on the passenger side.

› To search for a parking space on the driver's side, switch on the direction indicator for that side.

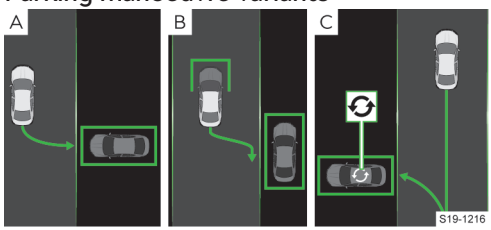
Searching for a parking space

› Drive along the line of parked cars at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

› When looking for a perpendicular parking space, drive at a speed of less than 20 km/h.

› When looking for a parallel parking space, drive at a speed of less than 40 km/h.

Parking manoeuvre variants



A Rear parking in a perpendicular parking space

B Rear parking in a parallel parking space

C Front parking in a perpendicular parking space

↻ Tapping the symbol – change parking mode

Before the parking manoeuvre

1. Once you have found a parking space, stop and drive backwards or forwards following the arrow in the instrument cluster display.
2. Let go of the steering wheel when the steering intervention message appears. The system will take control of the steering wheel.

Parking manoeuvre

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

› Only operate the pedals and the shift lever / gear selector of automatic gearbox.

1. Pay attention to your surroundings and drive backwards or forwards according to the arrow on the display in the instrument cluster.
2. Stop the vehicle when the symbol appears in the display and the horn sounds. The steering wheel will turn to the required position. The symbol will go out.
3. Drive backwards or forwards according to the arrow on the display.

When the parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding message will be displayed and an acoustic signal will sound.

Terminating the parking manoeuvre

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time using any of the following methods:

› Pressing the P button under the Infotainment system display

› Tapping the ✕ symbol on the Infotainment system display

› By intervening in the steering

Automatic forward parking without searching for a parking space first

Forward parking:

1. Pull partially forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P button under the Infotainment system.
3. Follow the instructions on the display.

Rear parking:

1. Stop the vehicle behind a suitable parallel or perpendicular parking space.
2. Press the P button under the Infotainment system.
3. Follow the instructions on the display.

Leaving a parallel parking space

1. Press the P button under the Infotainment system.
2. Follow the instructions on the display in the instrument cluster.

Automatic speed reduction

If the vehicle exceeds the speed of 7 km/h during a parking manoeuvre, the system will reduce the speed.

If the vehicle exceeds the speed of 7 km/h for a second time, the parking manoeuvre is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

- The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
- Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.
- The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

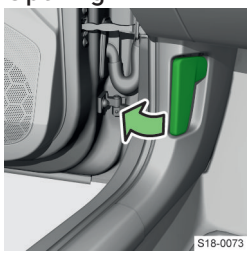
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

Before opening

1. Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
2. Keep away from the engine compartment.

Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.
› Raise the lid enough for the gas springs to keep it open.

Closing

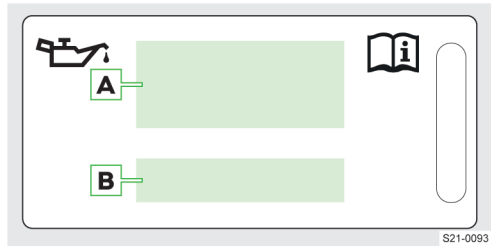
1. Pull the lid downwards.
2. Slam the lid lightly from a height of approximately 20 cm.
3. Check that the bonnet is closed.

⚠ NOTICE

› Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
› Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

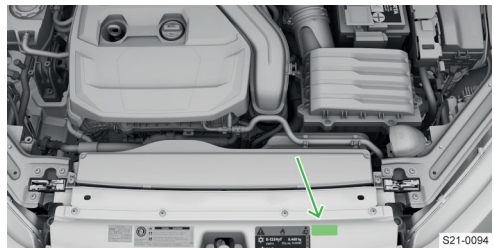
Specification



Engine oil sticker

A Engine oil specifications
B Engine oil viscosity

The engine oil sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment.



If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use the oil indicated on the sticker at the front of the engine compartment.

ⓘ When using the prescribed oil, the level can be adjusted as often as required.

ⓘ If the engine oil label on your car is missing, you can get information on the prescribed engine oil car from a specialist garage.

In an emergency

If engine oil of the prescribed specification is not available, you can once add until the next scheduled oil change a **maximum** of **0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications:

› **Vehicles with petrol engine**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, ILSAC GF-6A and API SP. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.
› **Vehicles powered by CNG**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, ILSAC GF-6A and API SP. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.
› **Vehicles with diesel engine**: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API CK-4. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.

Škoda Auto recommends that the **oil change** is then carried out by a specialist garage » *page 9*.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine may consume up to 0.5 l/ 1000 km Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

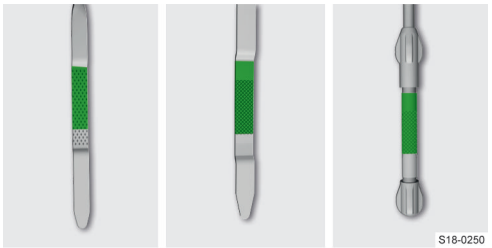
› Regularly check the oil level.

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface
✓ Engine switched off, at operating temperature

Checking the fill level

1. Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
4. Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



› The oil level must be within the marked range.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› The oil level must not be outside the marked range.
› If the oil level is **below** the marked area, do not continue driving, stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› If the oil level is **above** the marked area, continue driving with appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Do not use any oil additives.

Refuelling

1. Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
2. Top up the oil to the correct specification » *page 193* in 0.5 litre portions.
3. Check the oil level.
4. Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

ⓘ NOTICE

Škoda Auto recommends using approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant VW standard. The use of engine oils that do not comply with this standard could damage the engine.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends engine oils from the Škoda Genuine Parts product range.

Changing

Škoda Auto recommends that the **oil change** is carried out by a specialist garage » *page 9*.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

 flashes, simultaneously with illuminated ⚠

or:

 flashes, simultaneously with illuminated ⚠

› Check the engine oil level » *page 194*

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

 illuminates together with ⚠

or:

 illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates required engine oil top up.

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required » *page 194*.

Engine oil level too high

 illuminates together with ⚠

or:

 illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates the need to reduce the engine oil level.

› Check the engine oil level » *page 194*

Engine oil level too high.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor malfunction

illuminates together with ⚠

or:

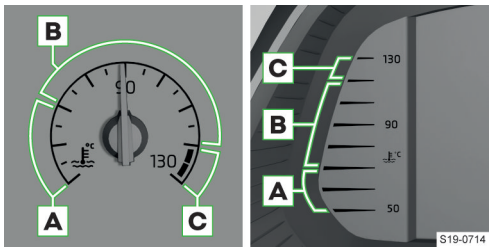
illuminates together with ⚠

Message regarding the engine oil sensor.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Low temperature
› Avoid high engine speed.

B Operating temperature

C High temperature

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Engine switched off and cold

Checking the fill level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the **MIN** mark, top up the coolant.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refuelling

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

› Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

1. Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
2. Refill with coolant with the correct specification.
3. Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) coolant to top up.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine! Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or:

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates the required coolant check.

› Check the coolant level » page 195.

If the coolant level is OK:

› Check or change the radiator fan fuse » page 206, Replacing a fuse.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or:

illuminates together with ⚠

Report indicates engine overheating.

1. Do not continue driving.

2. Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
3. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.

Engine fault

 illuminates together with 

or:

 illuminates together with 

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

1. Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
2. Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

1. Do not continue driving.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Fault in the engine control system

 illuminates together with 

or:

 illuminates together with 

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

 illuminates together with 

or:

 illuminates together with 

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault in the diesel engine control system

 flashing

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault in the diesel engine glow plug

 illuminated, of if it does not light up after ignition is switched on

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Particulate filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particulate filter

 illuminates together with

or:

 illuminates together with

› Carry out the filter cleaning procedure » page 196.

ⓘ If the indicator light illuminates, you must count with increased fuel consumption, reduced engine power and unavailable START-STOP function.

Filter cleaning

Cleaning condition

✓ The vehicle engine is at the operating temperature.

✓ For vehicles with a manual gearbox follow the gear changing recommendation on the instrument cluster display.

The procedure for vehicles with a diesel engine

› Drive at a minimum speed of 60 km/h with the engine revolutions at least at 2,000/min.

If the filter cleans up the indicator light  or  goes out.

If the indicator light comes on due to lack of fuel, the process can be interrupted.

› Top up the fuel and continue cleaning the filter.

If the indicator light  or  does not go out within 40 minutes, the filter has not been cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The procedure for vehicles with a petrol engine

1. Drive at a minimum speed of 80 km/h with the engine speed ranging from 3,000 to 5,000/min.
2. Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle move with a gear engaged for several seconds.
3. Repeat the procedure several times.

If the filter cleans up the indicator light or goes out.

If the indicator light or does not go out within 30 minutes, the filter was not cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Exhaust gas control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system fault

illuminated

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce emissions harmful to the environment and CO_2-Emissions and saving fuel.

Troubleshooting

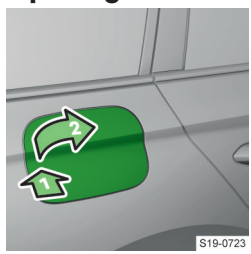
If the instrument cluster display shows a message that the louvre function is restricted, the maximum speed of the vehicle will be limited to 160 km/h.

This may be caused by ice or snow in the louvre area. Once the ice or snow has melted, the louvres will be functional again.

› If ice or snow is not the cause of the restricted function, seek assistance from a specialist garage

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

(AdBlue®)

Regulations

Use only AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard.

Do not put any additives in the AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a urea–based solution AdBlue® is automatically injected into the exhaust system.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 °C. Automatic heating ensures the system's functionality.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the fill level

The AdBlue® level in the tank is checked automatically.

The range of the vehicle with the current AdBlue® level and the information on the minimum and maximum AdBlue® volume to refill can be displayed in the trip data in the instrument cluster display under .

If the range with the current level of AdBlue® drops to 0 km, it will not be possible to start the engine.

› Top up the AdBlue® to the maximum, if possible.

Conditions for topping up

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Independent heater switched off
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

Methods of topping up

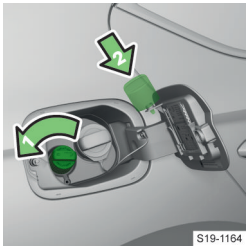
› Pump gun at the filling station

› Filling bottle or a canister
› In a professional garage

It is recommended to use bottles and canisters from the Škoda Genuine Parts range for topping up from a refill bottle or a canister. The refill bottles are equipped with an overfill protection system.

Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the cap and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Top up AdBlue® .
4. Do not continue refilling if the AdBlue® tank is full.

   The tank is full when the pump gun is turned off or when the AdBlue® stops flowing from the filler bottle.
5. Place the cap on the neck of the tank and turn it against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.
6. Close the tank flap and click it into place.
7. Switch on the ignition for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the topping up.

   You can then start the engine and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system that injects AdBlue® into the exhaust system!

› Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster.
› The lifetime of AdBlue® is 4 years.

  If the contents of the tank have not been consumed within this time, have it replaced by a specialist garage.
› Do not use expired AdBlue® solution for topping up.

Troubleshooting

Low level of AdBlue®

or or illuminated

› Add AdBlue® » *page 197*.

AdBlue® system fault

or or illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operation at very low temperatures

If the vehicle is exposed to outdoor temperatures below -11 °C for a long time, AdBlue® in the tank may freeze. A message will appear on the instrument cluster display. During this time, pollutants are not reduced.

› It is recommended to leave the vehicle in a place with a temperature above -11 °C, e.g. in a garage.

When a sufficient volume of AdBlue® has thawed in the tank, the message will disappear.

Technical data and specifications

The capacity of the AdBlue® tank is approximately 12 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**
› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

🛈 To make sure that the fuel system works properly, it is recommended to use up the contents of the petrol tank every 6 months until the warning light comes on .

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with the EN 228 European standard (in Russia it is GOST 32513-2013).

Use only **unleaded petrol** with the maximum bioethanol content specified on the label on the inside of the fuel filler cap.

🛈 It is recommended to use petrol with additives from petrol pump dispensers at petrol stations.

Octane number

Use petrol with the octane number specified for your vehicle.

Petrol with a **higher octane number** than that specified for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› When petrol with an octane number lower than that specified is used, only continue driving at mid-

range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.

› Refuel using petrol of the specified octane number as soon as possible.

› Do not use petrol with an octane number **lower** than **91**.

The specified petrol is RON/ROZ 95/min. with 92 or 93 octane number

We recommend using petrol with **95** octane number.

Or you can use the petrol with **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** petrol can be used (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ min. with 95 octane number.

Use petrol with minimum **95** octane number.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ with 98/(95) octane number

We recommend using petrol with **98** octane number.

Or you can use petrol with **95** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additives

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead or e.g. LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.

› Do not put any additional additives to diesel fuel that complies with the EN 228 standard.

› If you are using petrol that does not comply with the EN 228 standard, it is recommended to contact a specialist garage regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by Škoda Auto.

Conditions for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked

✓ Independent heater switched off

✓ Ignition off

Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
4. Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
5. Remove the fuel nozzle and place it back on the petrol pump.
6. Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
7. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

Troubleshooting

If any fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used in your vehicle

1. Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

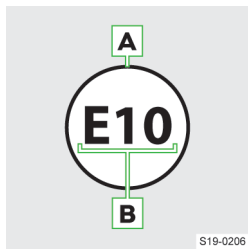
Lack of fuel

illuminates – the petrol level has reached the reserve area.

› Refuel

Technical data and specifications

The fuel specified for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol

B Organic share as a percentage

Example of fuel marking

Fuel tank capacity for front-wheel drive vehicles

› Approximately 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on engine type), of which 6 litres are reserve.

› On CNG-powered vehicles, the volume of the petrol tank is approximately 9 litres.

Fuel tank capacity for 4x4 vehicles
Approximately 55 l, including a 6 l reserve.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**

› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

ⓘ To ensure that the fuel system functions properly, it is recommended that the diesel fuel tank is used up every 6 months until the warning light comes on ⛽.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

Regulations

Standards
Diesel fuel must comply with the EN 590 European standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013), in Vietnam at least EURO 5).

Use only **diesel** that contains **maximum 7 % of biodiesel** (B7).

ⓘ It is recommended to use diesel fuel with additives, which is available from petrol station pumps.

Operation in different climatic conditions
Use only diesel fuel that matches the current or expected climatic conditions.

Additives

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use RME biofuel, even as an additive in diesel fuel.

› Do not put any additional additives to diesel fuel that complies with the EN 590 standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013, in Vietnam at least EURO 5).

› If you are using diesel fuel that does not comply with the EN 590 standard (in Russia it is GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013, in Vietnam at least EURO 5), we recommend that you check with a qualified workshop about the possible use of diesel fuel additives approved by Škoda Auto.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off

Refuelling

Protection against refuelling with incorrect fuel
Vehicles with a diesel engine may have a protection against misfuelling in the filler neck of the fuel tank.

In some countries, the diameter of the pump nozzle may be the same for both diesel and petrol. Before travelling to such a country, have the protection removed by a specialist garage.

Refuelling
› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
4. Do not continue refuelling after the fuel pump nozzle switches off.
5. Remove the fuel nozzle and place it back on the petrol pump.
6. Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
7. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

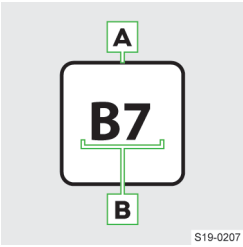
Troubleshooting

Filling up with other than diesel fuel complying with the standard
1. Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Diesel fuel pump nozzle cannot be easily inserted into the fuel filler neck
› If the pump nozzle cannot be easily inserted into the fuel filler neck, move the nozzle sideways when inserting it.

Technical data and specifications

The fuel specified for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Diesel fuel

B Organic share as a percentage



The diesel fuel must conform to European standard EN 15940.

Synthetic diesel fuel

Fuel tank capacity for front-wheel drive vehicles

Approximately 45 litres or 50 litres (depending on engine type), of which 6 litres are reserve.

Fuel tank capacity for all-wheel drive vehicles

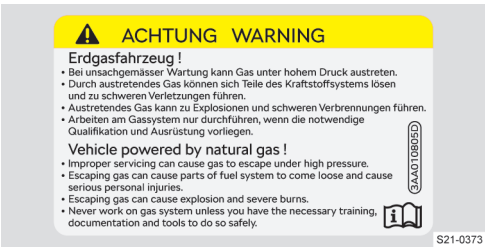
Approximately 55 l, including a 6 l reserve.

Illuminates – the diesel fuel level has reached the reserve area

CNG (compressed natural gas)

What you should be mindful of

Warning label in the engine compartment



⚠ WARNING

CNG is highly explosive and highly flammable.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion, fire, or risk to life!

› Do not ignore the smell of gas in the vehicle or when pumping.

› The CNG tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to any undesirable external heat sources.

› Do not enter the vehicle while CNG is being pumped, as electrostatic charge may be generated when entering the vehicle. If you subsequently touch the filling coupling of the refuelling equipment, sparks and fire may result.

⚠ WARNING

The CNG fuel tanks can be damaged if the chassis strikes the road or in an accident, for example. If you pump CNG into a damaged tank, it may rupture and cause severe or fatal injuries!

› Have your gas equipment checked immediately by a specialist garage.

› Do not refill the CNG until the gas system has been checked.

ⓘ NOTICE

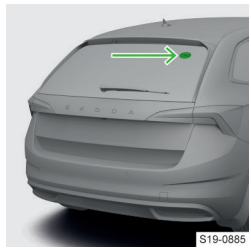
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use LNG (Liquefied Natural Gas), LPG (Liquefied Petroleum Gas) or Hythane (a mixture of hydrogen and methane).

Regulations



Variants of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles .



Position of the sticker

Regular gas system checks

On natural gas-powered vehicles regular gas system checks must be carried out at a specialist workshop. The vehicle operator is responsible for ensuring these tests are carried out properly.

For new cars, this is after 4 years and then every 2 years

Valid for Germany, Austria and Sweden: For a new vehicle after 3 years and thereafter every 2 years

› Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers
› Check the filler cap
› Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean sealing ring if necessary

Lifetime of the containers

The lifetime of the natural gas containers is max. 20 years.

› Ensure the gas tanks are replaced at the appropriate time.

Indicates the natural gas system test.

illuminates
Notification regarding the remaining days until the natural gas system is checked

› Ensure the test is carried out by a specialist company.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the natural gas system is not tested by the due date, the natural gas drive will not be available in your vehicle.

Functionality

The CNG-powered vehicle is also equipped with a petrol engine » page 198.

Indication of CNG-powered driving

The display may vary, depending on its type:

illuminated

Or:

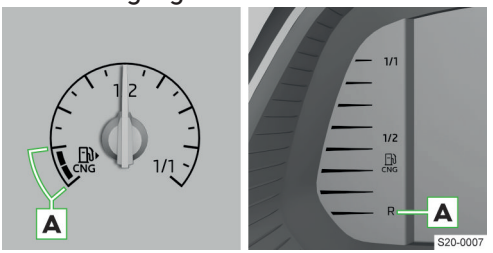
illuminated

Automatic switching from CNG to petrol

The vehicle will automatically switch from CNG to petrol in the following situations, for example:

› If the CNG tank is empty or the tank pressure is insufficient.
› After CNG refuelling, when the vehicle's fuel system is detecting the quality of the CNG.
› The outside air temperature is very low.

CNG level gauge



A The CNG level has reached the reserve range.

illuminated – the CNG level has reached the reserve area

⚠ WARNING

Risk of getting stuck in traffic!

› When the indicator light illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.
› **Never use up the contents of the petrol tank completely.**
› Monitor the CNG range in the driving data » page 79.
› Plan to refill the CNG in good time.

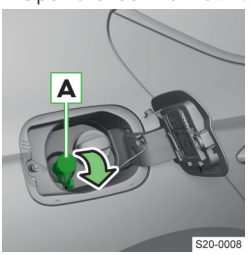
ⓘ To make sure that the fuel system works properly, it is recommended to use up the contents of the petrol tank every 6 months until the warning light comes on.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Stationary heating switched off
✓ Ignition off

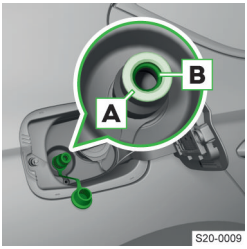
Refuelling

› Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Remove cap A from the CNG filler neck.
2. Place the refuelling coupling on the filler neck and start CNG refuelling as instructed on the refuelling device.

When the tank is full, the pumping device will automatically stop pumping.



1. After releasing the pump coupling, check that the sealing ring B remains in the filler neck A.
2. If the sealing ring has slipped onto the filling coupling, put it back into the filler neck.
3. Replace the cap on the filler neck.
4. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

ⓘ The CNG pumping devices are equipped with an overfill protection with respect to outside temperatures. In very high outside temperatures, the CNG tank may not be able to be completely filled.

ⓘ If you park the vehicle immediately after refuelling, the CNG tank gauge may not show the same amount of fuel as it did immediately after refuelling. This does not indicate a leak in the system, but a pressure drop due to the cooling of the CNG in the tank after refuelling.

Troubleshooting

Unknown refuelling equipment

The operation of various CNG refuelling systems may differ. When refuelling CNG at an unfamiliar facility, be instructed or have a service station attendant perform the refuelling.

Gas leak

If you suspect a gas leak (smell an odour), proceed as follows.

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Extinguish cigarettes, switch off and remove objects from the car that may cause sparks or a fire.
4. Open the doors and boot lid to allow sufficient ventilation.
5. If the smell persists, do not continue driving.
6. If it is not possible to leave a confined space (e.g. tunnel, underpass, garage, boat, etc.) with the leaking vehicle, report this immediately to the emergency services.
7. Have your gas equipment checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



CNG (compressed natural gas)

The fuel tank is designed for around 17.5 kg of CNG.

12V vehicle battery and fuses

12V vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12V battery

Wear protective goggles!

The acid in the 12V battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and naked flames away from the 12V battery! Do not smoke!

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when the 12V battery is charged!

Keep children away from the 12V battery!

Follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual!

Rinse eyes with water at once. Seek medical attention immediately!

Functionality – protection against the 12V battery discharging

Automatic system-related discharge protection for the 12V battery

› Increases the engine idling speed
› Switches off certain consumers or restricts their use of power

Recommendations when the vehicle is stationary for more than three weeks

› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12V battery.

Causes of the 12V battery discharging

› Worn 12V battery
› Frequent short journeys
› Low temperatures
› Vehicle stationary for a long period of time
› The ignition is switched on too long
› The parking lights are switched on too long
› A 12V device is plugged in.

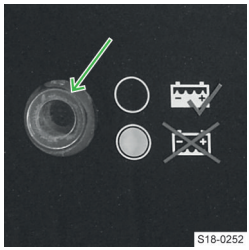
Checking and charging the 12V vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The specialist garage checks the condition of the 12V battery during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12V battery with an acid level indicator.



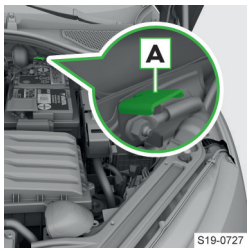
› Tap on the indicator before testing to clear air bubbles.
› Black – the acid level is OK.
› Colourless or pale yellow – the acid is too low, the 12V battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12V battery

✓ Ignition off
✓ Power consumers switched off

The process of charging a 12V battery

To charge the 12V battery, set a max. charging current at 0.1 times its total capacity until fully charged.



Earth point

1. Connect the ⊕ charger terminal to ⊕ pole of the 12V battery.
2. Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the A earth point.
3. Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
4. After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
5. Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12V battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› Hydrogen is released during charging. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.

› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12V battery.
› Do not "quick charge" a 12V battery yourself, have it done by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE
A flat 12V battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

The 12V battery does not charge when the engine is running

 or illuminates

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine fault

 or illuminates

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting, replacing

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of fire!
› Do not mix up the connection cables.

Uncoupling

1. Close the power tailgate, all windows, the sliding/tilting roof and the power sun visor.
2. Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
3. Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Coupling

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lights come on

› If, after a short distance, one of the above indicator lights does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12V battery

› Window operation » page 36.

Changing

Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage. The new 12V battery must have the same specifications as the original battery.

Using jump start cables

Use

A vehicle with a discharged or defective 12V vehicle battery can be started using jump start cables connected to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!
› Do not jump start with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12V vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12V vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.
  › The acid level in the 12V vehicle battery is too low » page 204.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

Nominal voltage of both vehicle batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged 12V vehicle battery.

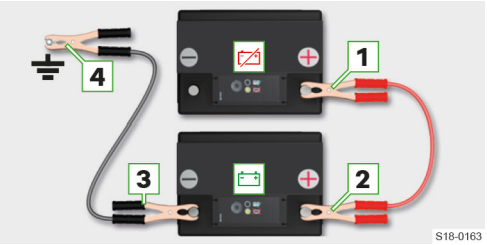
Using another vehicle's 12V vehicle battery to start the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Risk of injury! Risk of damage to the vehicle
› Position the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment

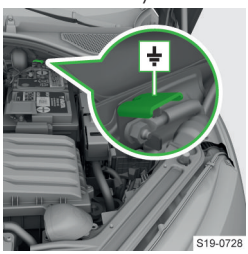
ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of short circuit
› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12V vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connecting the jump start cables

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Connect the terminals of the jump start cables of the discharged 12V vehicle battery and the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery as shown below.



1 ⊕ pole of the discharged 12V vehicle battery
2 ⊕ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery
3 ⊖ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery (or earth point)
4 ⏚ earth point in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery



Earth point

Starting the engine

› Start the engine of the assistance vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with an internal combustion engine).

Or:

1. Switch on the electric drive of the assistance vehicle (applies to a vehicle with an electric motor).
2. Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery.
3. If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cables

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with higher-rated fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

› We recommend using replacement fuses from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may serve several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

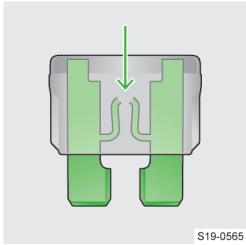
⚠ NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuses can cause damage to electrical equipment!

› Protect the fuses from dirt and moisture.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.

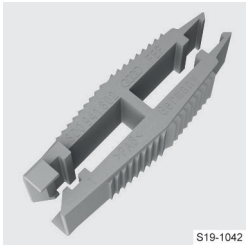


Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition off
✓ The driver's door open
✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse by means of the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

› Use the appropriate end of the clamp based on the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Accessing the fuses – the left–hand drive

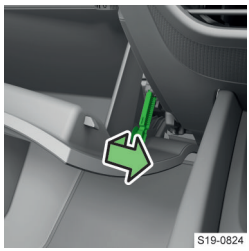
› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



› Press the locking button and open the fuse box.
› Replace the fuse.
› Close the fuse box.

Accessing the fuses – the right–hand drive

› Open the glove compartment on the passenger's side.

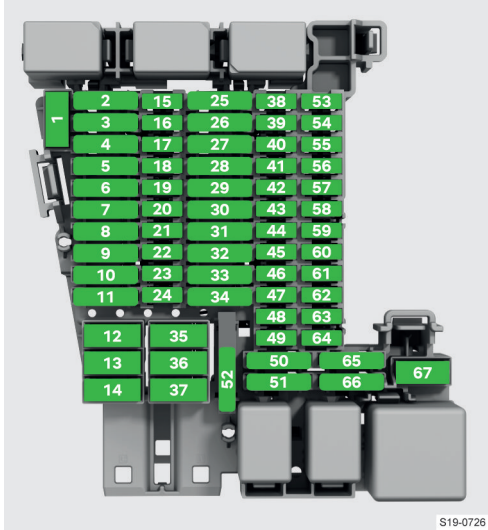


› Release the box brake pull pin.



› Press the locking catch and open the fuse box.
› Replace the fuse.
› Replace the box and pull the brake pin.
› Close the fuse box.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
3	Towing device
4	SCR (AdBlue®)
5	Selector lever (automatic gearbox)
6	Interior lighting
7	Front seat heating
8	Sliding/tilting roof
9	Central locking + window controls (left-hand side), left exterior mirror (heating, tilting, glass position adjustment)
11	Towing device
12	Exterior vehicle lighting, right front fog light, third brake light, registration plate lighting
13	Central locking (rear doors and boot lid, fuel filler flap), windscreen washers, headlight washers
14	Music amplifier
16	Airbags
17	SCR (AdBlue®)
18	Steering wheel lock, KESSY (keyless locking)
19	Instrument cluster, emergency call, on-line services
20	Phone box, USB ports at the front
21	Rear view camera, area view system (Top View)
22	Front seat ventilation, telematic device

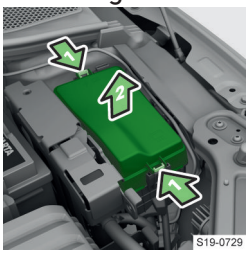
Fuse number	Consumer
23	Front interior lighting, microphone, tilting/sliding roof control
24	All-wheel drive
25	Belt tensioner – front left
26	Central locking + window controls (right-hand side of the vehicle), right-hand exterior mirror (heating, folding, glass position adjustment)
27	Belt tensioner – front right
29	Towing device
30	The Infotainment system
31	Towing device
32	Rear seat heating
34	230V power socket
35	Exterior vehicle lighting, front left fog light
36	Air conditioning
37	Electrically operated boot lid
39	Steering wheel heating
41	Data bus
42	Automatic gearbox, gear shift indicator
43	Air conditioning at the front, air conditioning at the rear, independent auxiliary heating, rear window heating
44	Lane change assist (Side Assist), diagnostic socket, light and rain sensor, automatic headlamp inclination control, parking brake, alarm, light switch, buttons on central console
45	Electronics on steering column, control levers under steering wheel
46	The Infotainment system, Head-up display
47	Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)
52	12V socket in the boot
53	Contactless operation of the boot power lid
58	Park Pilot, Park Assist, Front radar sensor, front camera for assist systems
59	Parking brake, air conditioning, reversing sensor, interior rear-view mirror, engine sound generator(OctaviaRS)
60	Diagnostic connection, telematic equipment
61	Clutch switch, starting
62	USB at the rear, USB at the interior rear-view mirror

Fuse number	Consumer
67	Rear window heating

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Accessing the fuses



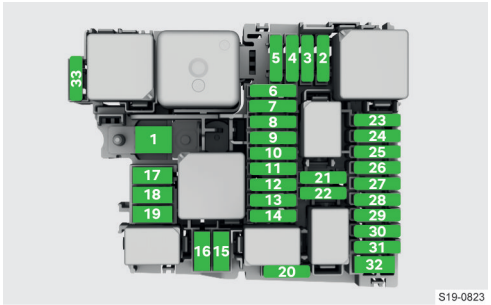
- Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
- Replace the fuse.
- Fit the cover and click it into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Power steering The fuse may only be replaced by a specialist garage
2	ESC assist system, engine control system, engine components
3	Ignition, CNG drive (applies to G-TEC vehicles)
4	Front left headlight
5	Front right headlight
6	Alarm
7	Automatic gearbox
8	Brake booster
9	Horn

Fuse number	Consumer
10	Front wipers
12	Automatic gearbox
13	ESC assist system
14	Independent auxiliary heater
15	ESC assist system
17	Heating
18	Heating
20	VAQ differential
21	Engine control system
22	Starter
23	Engine control system
24	Engine components
25	Engine components
26	Engine components
27	Lambda probes, particulate filter, NOx sensor
28	Engine components
29	Fuel pump
32	Windscreen heating
33	Heating

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

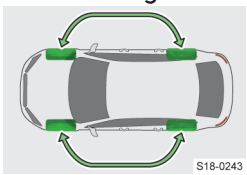
ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
› Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

› Incorrect tyre pressure
› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking
› Incorrect wheel alignment
› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.

Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
60 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
16 Wheel diameter in inches
92 Load index
H Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

88 560 kg
89 580 kg
90 600 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg
94 670 kg
95 690 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

M 130 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

A tyre is considered worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

ⓘ The tread depth can be measured with a gauge on the ice scraper. The scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler cap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Check the tread depth regularly.

› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 18 23 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 18. week of the year 2023.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

› Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel » page 212

› Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 213

› Tyre repair kit » page 215

Tyre pressure change

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the following menu, select the item to display the tyre status:

CAR > Tyres

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tyres

Use

All-season or winter tyres improve performance in winter weather conditions. They are identified by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tyre provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tyre manufacturer's sticker provides information about the grip on ice.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible performance, use tyres with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on ice-free roads without snow and at temperatures above 7°C.

Usage conditions

When using all-season or winter tyres with a lower speed category than the specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

1. In the Infotainment system, set the speed limit based on the category of tyres fitted.
2. Affix a warning label in the driver's field of view with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (only applies to certain countries).

Settings

Set the speed limit of the tyres in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > > *Exterior* > *Tyres*

Or:

MENU > > > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *Tyres* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select *Tyres* and set the speed limit.

Snow chains

Use

Snow chains improve handling the vehicle on icy or snowy roads.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and tyre damage

› Do not use chains on sections without snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

› Remove the wheel covers before fitting the snow chains.
› Mount snow chains on the front wheels only.

Technical data and specifications

Permitted rim and tyre combinations for mounting snow chains:

Rim dimensions	Tyre dimensions
6,5Jx16 ET46	205/60 R16
6,5Jx17 ET46	205/55 R17

Only use snow chains with links no larger than 9 mm, including locks.

Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

› The dimensions of a standard full-size spare wheel match the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.
› The temporary spare wheel is not full-size and it is marked with a warning label on the disc. It is intended to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate the temporary spare wheel to the highest prescribed pressure.

Temporary spare wheel

The temporary wheel is marked with a warning label on the disc and it is intended to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The temporary spare wheel is significantly narrower than the factory-fitted wheels.

Removing and replacing the wheel in vehicles without sound system

The spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel is stored in a recess under the carpet or between two floor levels in the boot.

Removing



1. Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.
2. Unscrew the lock nut.
3. Remove the wheel.

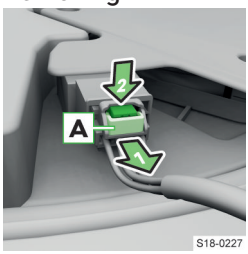
Inserting

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Put the fastening strap through the opposite holes in the wheel disc.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

ⓘ If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Removing and stowing the wheel in vehicles with sound system

Removing



Unplugging the connector:

1. Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.
2. Pull out a little the safety catch A.
3. Press the safety buttons and remove the connector.



Removing the wheel:

1. Unscrew the lock nut.
2. Remove the bass loudspeaker.
3. Remove the wheel.

Inserting

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Insert the bass loudspeaker.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
5. Secure the safety lock A.

6. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

ⓘ

› If the subwoofer does not fit in the wheel you have replaced, stow it in the luggage compartment.
› If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

   Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road and safely behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors, the boot and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

› Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
› Create a non-slip base (e.g. place a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
› Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
› Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.
› Do not start the engine of the raised vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

1. Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
2. In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

   The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.
4. Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.
5. Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
› Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not grease or lubricate screws.
› Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

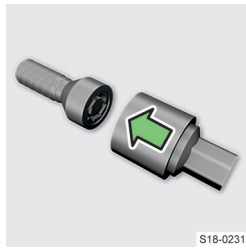
Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Before loosening the bolts

› If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 216.
› If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 216.

Instructions for a vehicle with anti-theft wheel bolts

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

Removing the bolts

⚠ WARNING

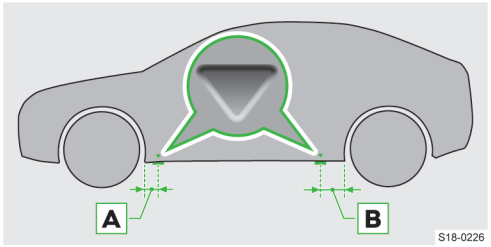
› If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



1. Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
2. Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.



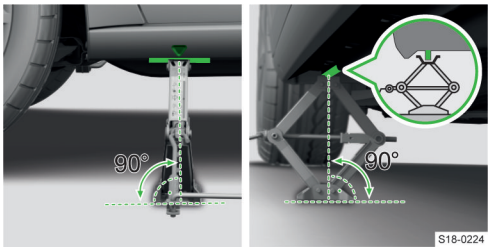
A 18 cm

B 30 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

NOTICE

› Use the jack from the tool kit.



1. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
2. Support the base plate of the jack with its full surface resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
3. Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
4. Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the ground.

Changing a wheel

1. Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
2. Carefully remove the wheel.
3. Fit the replacement wheel.
4. Contact tighten the bolts.
5. Lower the vehicle.

NOTICE

This applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

1. Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
2. Refit the wheel bolt caps » *page 216*.

   Or:

› Refit the full wheel covers » *page 216*.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the Škoda Genuine Parts.

Tyre repair kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors and the boot and the bonnet lid.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

1. Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
2. If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

3. If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

⚠ WARNING

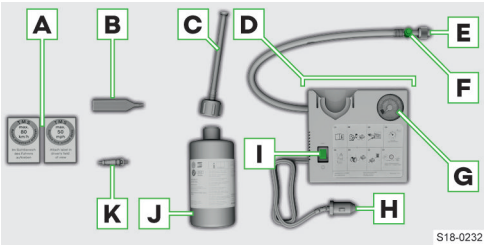
Risk of getting burned!

The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.

› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Content overview

The repair kit is stored in a box under the carpet in the luggage compartment.



- **A** Speed limit stickers
- **B** Extension for removing and inserting the valve insert
- **C** Filler hose with plug
- **D** Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
- **E** Tyre inflation hose
- **F** Pneumatic pressure relief button
- **G** Pressure indicator
- **H** Plug for 12V socket
- **I** Switch
- **J** Filling bottle
- **K** Replacement valve insert

Declaration of conformity is included with the compressor or in the on-board folders.

Restrictions on use

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

› The rim is damaged.

› Outside temperature is lower than minimum temperature specified in the instructions for the filling bottle.

› The puncture in the tyre is larger than 4 mm.

› The side of the tyre is damaged.

› The expiry date on the filler bottle has passed.

Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

1. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
2. Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
3. Shake the sealant bottle.
4. Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
5. Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
6. Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
7. Remove the filler hose from the valve.
8. Screw on the valve insert.

Inflate the tyre

1. Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Start the engine.
4. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
5. Switch on the compressor.
6. When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time specified by the kit manufacturer.
7. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
8. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
9. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

› Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.

› Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.

› Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

› After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

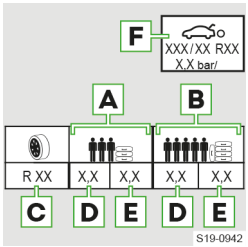
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Label with the specified tyre pressure values

The label with the specified tyre pressure values can be found under the fuel filler flap.



- **A** Tyre pressure in case of partial load
- **B** Tyre pressure when fully loaded
- **C** Tyre diameter in inches

  This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. It is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.
- **D** Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres
- **E** Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres
- **F** Specified tyre pressure value for the temporary wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitor indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the following menu, select the item to display the tyre status:

CAR > Tyres

Or:

MENU > >

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven wheel loading, e.g. driving with a trailer
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Mounted snow chains

Saving tyre pressure values

Saving tyre pressure values

1. Press the SET button under the Infotainment system.
2. Tap the function surface in the displayed Infotainment system menu.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

flashes approx. 1 minute and then remains illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

   If the indicator light flashes again after starting the engine there is a fault in the system.
2. Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Removing and installing bolt caps

Removing



1. Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
2. Remove the cover cap.

Installing

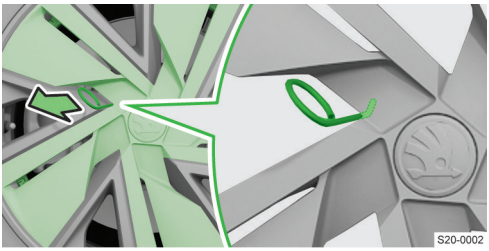
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full-width wheel cover

Removing and installing the trim

Removing

This applies to factory-built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.



1. Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims behind the rim close to the centre.
2. Pull the centre of the wheel trim loose and remove the trim.

ⓘ For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

This applies to factory-built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.

1. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Fit the trim to the wheel rim and gradually push the individual spokes of the trim until they are fully engaged.
3. Push the centre of the trim until it is fully engaged.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
2. Push the wheelbrace through the hook, push on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

   When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

ⓘ NOTICE

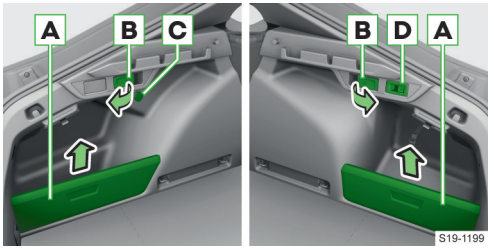
› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Luggage compartment equipment

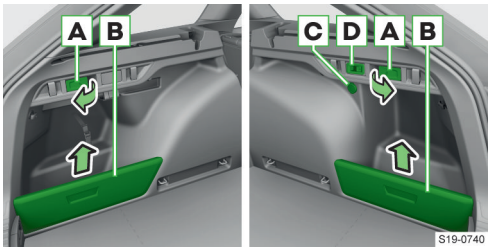
Overview

Boot of a vehicle without natural gas drive



Version 1

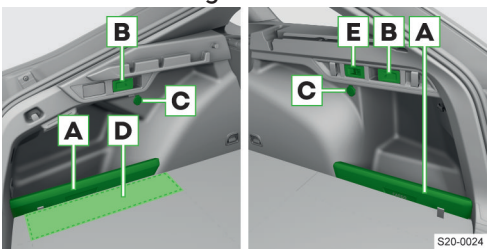
- **A** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **C** 12 volt socket
- **D** Trailer hitch switch



Version 2

- **A** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **B** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **C** 12 volt socket
- **D** Trailer hitch switch

Boot of a natural gas vehicle

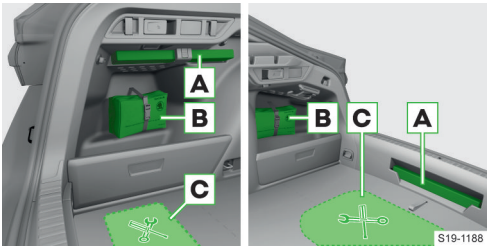


- **A** Removable partition of the storage compartment
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests
- **C** 12 volt socket
- **D** Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for the Cargo elements
  Load on floor covering max. 75 kg
- **E** Trailer hitch switch

Emergency equipment

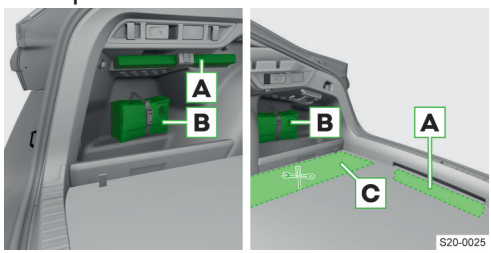
Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a non-CNG vehicle



- **A** Warning triangle (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **B** First aid kit location (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **C** Tool kit

Emergency equipment in the boot of a CNG-powered vehicle



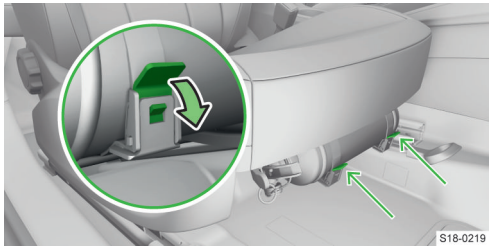
- **A** Warning triangle (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **B** Location of the first aid kit (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **C** Tool kit
  - › To access the on-board tool kit in the front part of the luggage compartment, fold down the right rear seat.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

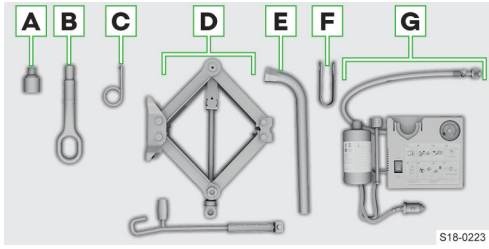
Only valid for certain countries.



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



- **A** Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- **B** Towing eye
- **C** Hook for removing the full wheel covers
- **D** Jack with a sign and crank
- **E** Wheelbrace
- **F** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- **G** Tyre repair kit

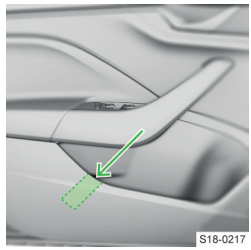
The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

NOTICE

When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

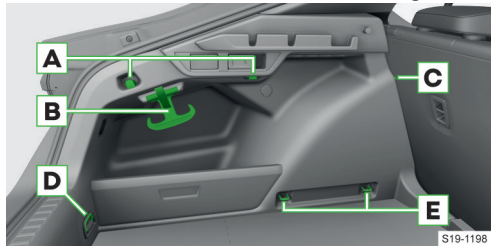
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Vehicle without the variable loading floor

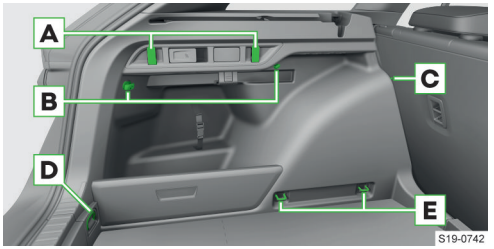


Option 1

- **A** Hooks for securing the fastening nets
- **B** Folding double hook for bags
  Max. load 5 kg on each side of the double hook
- **C** Holder for securing the fastening nets
- **D** Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets

Max. load 50 kg

E Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg



Option 2

A Folding hooks for bags
Max. load 7.5 kg

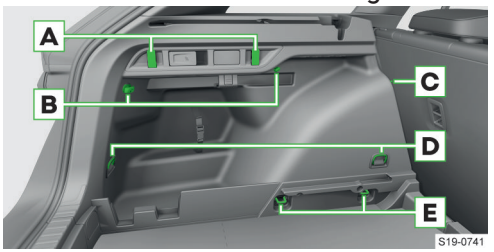
B Hooks for securing the fastening nets

C Holder for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max. load 50 kg

E Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

Vehicle with the variable loading floor



A Folding hooks for bags
Max. load 7.5 kg

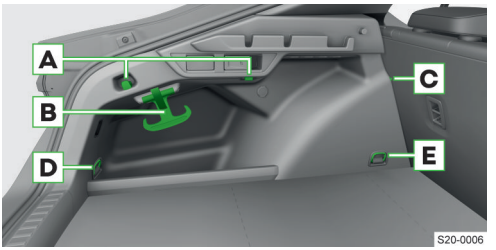
B Hooks for securing the fastening nets

C Holder for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

E Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

Vehicle with CNG drive



Option 1

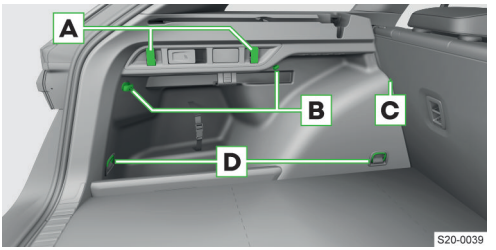
A Hooks for securing the fastening nets

B Folding double hook for bags
Max. load 5 kg on each side of the double hook

C Holder for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max. load 50 kg

E Lashing eye for securing load and securing nets
Max. load 50 kg



Option 2

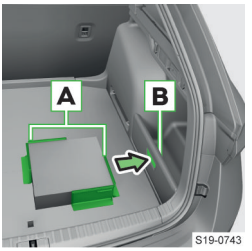
A Folding hooks for bags
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hooks for securing the fastening nets

C Holder for securing the fastening nets

D Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

More fasteners



Vehicle without CNG drive

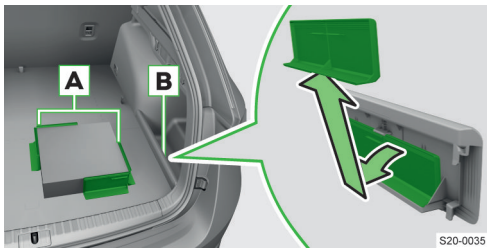
A Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg

› Fold down the Cargo element and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Space for stowing the Cargo securing elements is on the inside of the side

storage box or under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

B Button for unlocking the Cargo elements



Vehicle with CNG drive

A Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg

› Fold down the Cargo element and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Space for stowing the Cargo securing elements is on the inside of the side storage box or under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

B Cargo elements can be taken out.

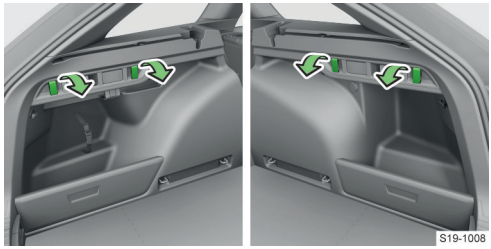
Bag hooks in the luggage compartment

Vehicle without CNG drive



Option 1

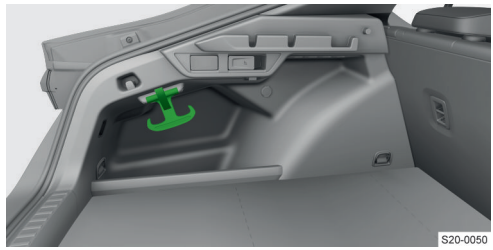
Maximum load on the double hook is 5 kg on each side.



Option 2

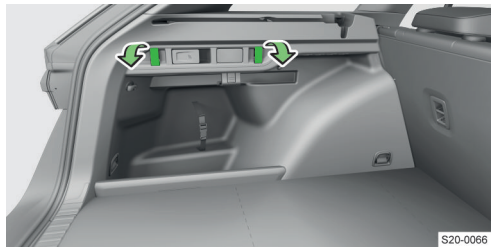
The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Vehicle with CNG drive



Option 1

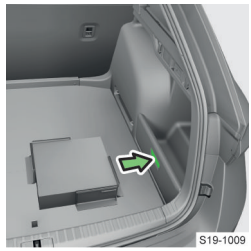
Maximum load on the double hook is 5 kg on each side.



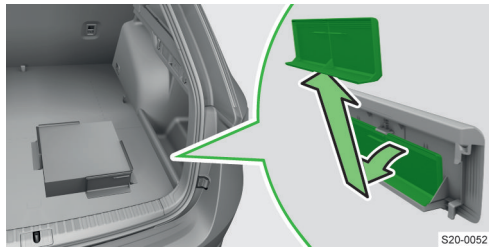
Option 2

The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Storage compartment with Cargoelements in the boot



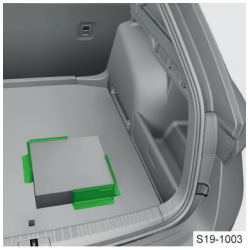
Vehicle without natural gas drive



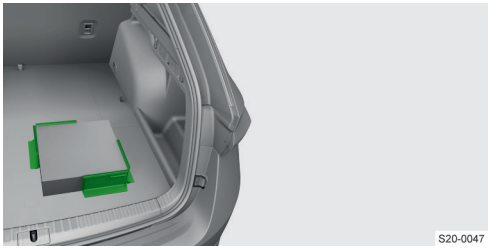
Natural gas vehicle

The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage space



Vehicle without CNG drive

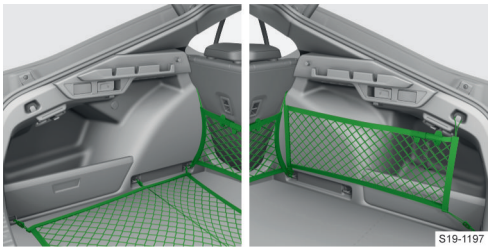


Vehicle with CNG drive

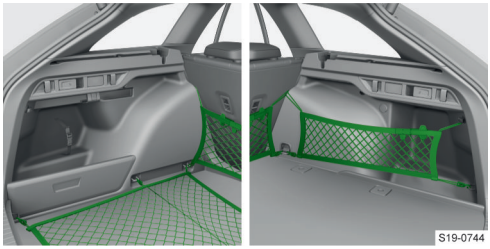
The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

Securing nets

Overview



Option 1

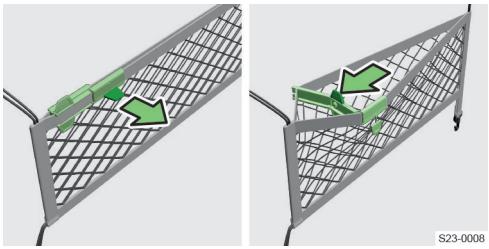


Option 2

The maximum load is indicated on the label of each fastening net.

The location of the fasteners in the luggage compartment may vary depending on the vehicle equipment » *page 219*.

Unfolding/folding up



Multifunction pocket

Operation

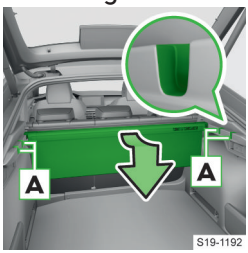
Maximum load on the multifunction pocket is 3 kg.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the rear light.

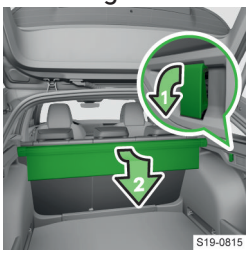
› The contents of the multifunction pocket must not extend beyond the top edge of the bars.

Unfolding – variant 1



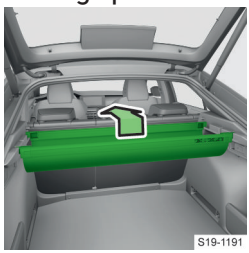
1. Detach the rear bar by turning it in the direction of the arrow.
2. Insert the rear bar into the A slots.

Unfolding – variant 2



1. Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment.
2. Detach the rear bar by turning it in the direction of the arrow and attach it to the hooks.

Folding up – variant 1



1. Take the rear bar from the slots.
2. Attach the rear bar to the front bar and put them together by rotating them.

Folding up – variant 2



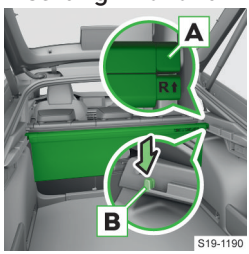
1. Take the rear mounting bar from the hooks.
2. Attach the rear bar to the front bar and put them together by rotating them.

Removing and inserting

Removing

1. Remove the roll-up cover of the luggage compartment.
2. Take the folded pocket up.

Inserting – variant 1



1. Insert the end of the mounting bar A into the B holder.
2. Follow a similar procedure on the left-end side.

Inserting – variant 2



› Insert the end of the mounting bar marked R↑ into the right lug and ↑L into the left lug.

Stowing the pocket under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift its rear part.



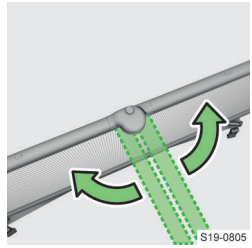
› Insert the cover into the recess in the side panels.

When stowing the roll-up cover and the multifunction pocket simultaneously, the rear of the roll-up cover must be placed over the multifunction pocket.

Net partition

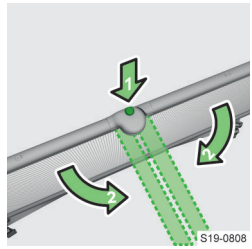
Fixing the net partition

Unfolding



› Open the mounting bar arms until the latch clicks audibly.

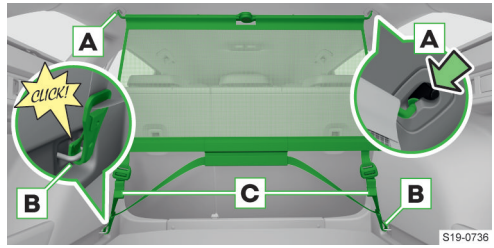
Folding up



› Squeeze the safety catch and fold the spreader bar arms together.

ⓘ You can stow the folded partition net under the mezzanine floor.

Fixing at the rear



1. Remove the roller shutter cover or fold down the rear seat backrests.

2. Insert the mounting bar into the A lug on one side and push it forward.
3. Secure the other end of the bar in the same way.
4. Snap the B hooks into the lashing eyes.
5. Tighten the straps by the loose ends C.

Fixing at the front
The procedure is similar to the rear.

The fixing lugs for the hooks are under the centre pillars of the car.

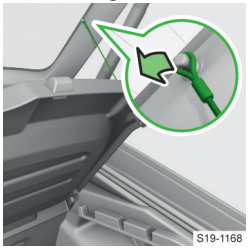
Releasing
Releasing is carried out in the opposite way to fixing.

Double-sided carpet

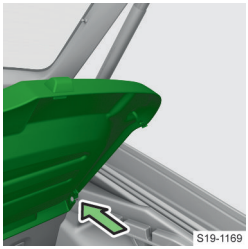
Overview
The vehicle can be equipped with a double-sided carpet in the luggage compartment. One side is textile and the other is washable.

Boot lid

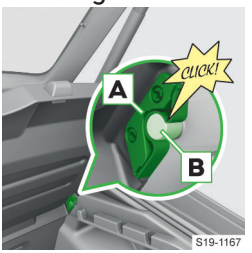
Removing and inserting
⚠ WARNING
Do not put any items on the rigid boot cover

Removing


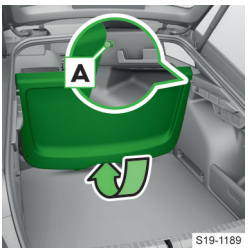
› Unhook the straps.



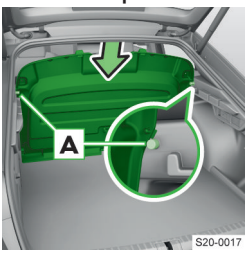
› Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.
› Remove the cover.

Inserting


1. Insert the mount A opposite the holder B on both sides of the boot.
2. Press on the cover from above until it engages.
3. Hook in the retaining straps.

Stowing the cover behind the rear seats of a non-CNG vehicle


1. Remove the cover and place it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.
2. Lift the front of the cover up.
3. Slide the cover upwards between the rear seats and the cover holder A.

Stowing the cover behind the rear seats of a CNG-powered vehicle


› Slide the cover between the rear seats and the cover holder A.

⚠ WARNING
The boot cover stowed behind the rear seats restricts the driver's rear view.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

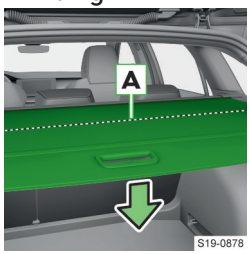
Operation

Pulling out



› Pull the cover out by the handle until it clicks into place.

Winding



› Press the cover at the handle.

The cover will wind up into the middle position A.

Press again and the cover will wind up completely.

In cold climates, the cover may wind more slowly.

Settings

Automatic winding of the cover into the middle position

The cover is automatically retracted into the middle position when the boot lid is opened.

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > *Exterior* > *Opening and closing*

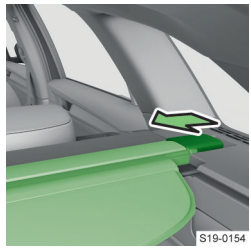
Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > *Exterior*

1. Select the screen with the *Central locking* item by swiping with your finger.
2. Select the item *Central locking*.

Removing and inserting

Removing and inserting the retracted cover



› Press the end of the cross bar and remove or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

› Remove the variable loading floor.

Or:

› Unfold the variable loading floor in the upper position and lift its rear part.



› Insert the cover into the recess of the side panels.

› Fold the loose part of the cover with the handle forward.

When stowing the roll-up cover and the multifunction pocket simultaneously, the front end of the roll-up cover must be placed over the multifunction pocket.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

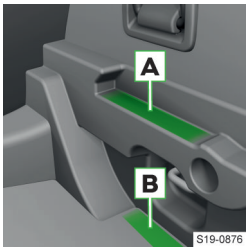
Setting the position

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position



› Lift the variable loading floor and pull it towards you so that it is lowered in the front area onto the floor covering in the boot.



› To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.

› To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area in space B.



› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Fasten the raised variable loading floor in the upper position



› Lift the rear section of the variable loading floor.



› Secure the raised variable loading floor to the frame of the boot lid with the hook.

⚠ NOTICE

Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

Removing and inserting

1. Raise the variable loading floor about 15 cm below the level of the boot lid and remove it.
2. Insert it in the reverse way.

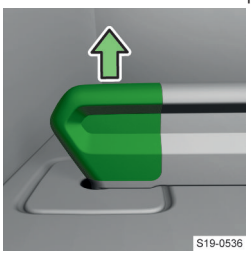
Partition in the boot

Removing and inserting

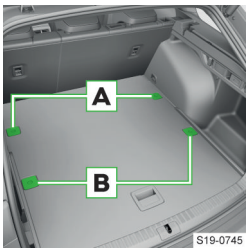
Removing and inserting the partition

The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.



› To **remove**, pull the securing tabs upwards and outwards and remove the partition.



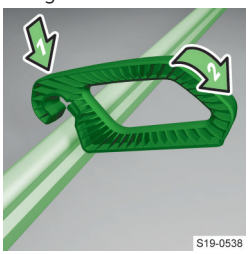
› To **insert**, engage the partition in the fixing points A or B.

Remove fastening element and insert

The fastening element prevents the cargo from slipping.

The fastening element is attached to the partition on the variable loading floor.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.



› To **insert**, position the fastening element in an oblique direction on the partition and press downwards.

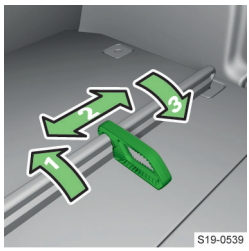
› **Removing** takes place in reverse order.

Move the fastening element



1 Release
2 Moving
3 Applying

Partition with fastening element in the boot



The maximum load for the partition is 10 kg.

The maximum load for the fastening element is 10 kg.

Load-through bag

Insert and lock

In the bag, a max. of 4 pairs of skis with poles can be transported.

› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards.
› Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the poles with the tips facing to the rear into the bag and close the bag.



› Tighten the strap A around the skis in front of the bindings.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.



› Guide the securing strap B through the opening around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place.
› Insert the securing strap into the lock until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

The maximum weight of the transported skis is 17 kg.

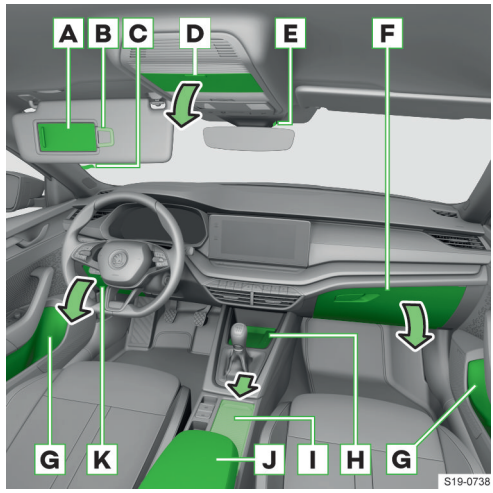
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the armrest!

› Handle the bag and the skis with care.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make-up mirror
B Ticket holder
C Parking permit holder
D Glasses holder
Max. load 0.25 kg
› Press the button to open.
E Input USB

The USB input can only be used for charging.

F Storage compartment

Max. load 3 kg

A card holder and pencil holder are inside the storage compartment.

› Pull the handle to open the storage compartment.

G Storage compartment

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Space for waste container

› Storage compartment for reflective vest

H Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):

› Phone box

› Inputs USB

The USB inputs can be used for charging and for data transfer.

I Storage compartment

A cup holder is in the storage compartment.

› Pull the bar to open the storage compartment.

J Adjustable armrest with storage compartment

› To open the compartment, lift the armrest.

K Storage compartment

Max. load 0.5 kg

A card holder is inside the storage compartment.

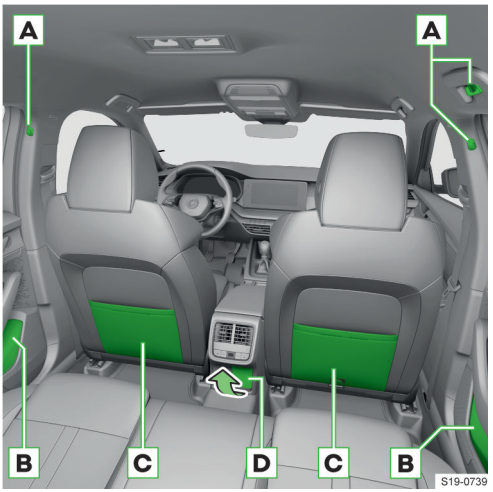
› Pull the handle to open.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment **D**

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook

Max. load 2 kg

B Storage tray

› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l

› Storage compartment for the reflective vest

C Storage pocket

› Telephone pocket

D Depending upon vehicle equipment:

› 230 volt socket and USB connection

The USB connection is for charging only.

› USB-connections

The USB connections are for charging only.

› Storage tray

⚠ WARNING

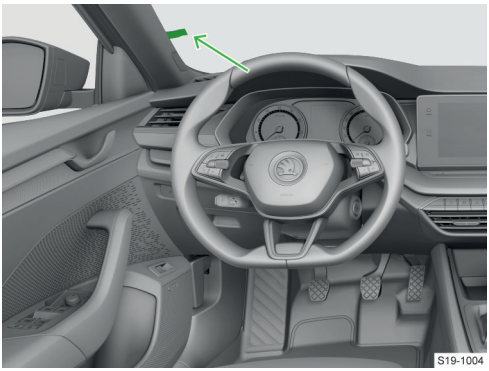
› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Storage pocket for phone



Parking permit holder



The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment



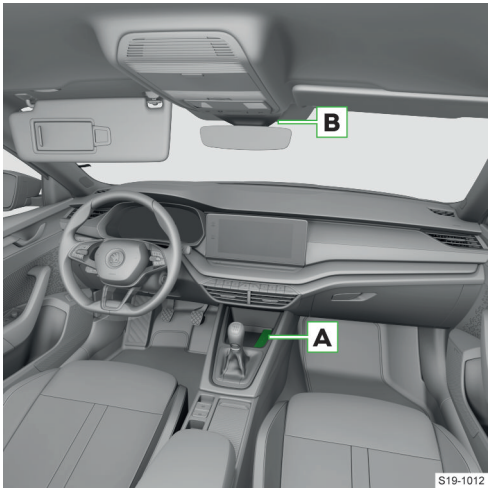
The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment



The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

USB inputs



A The USB inputs can be used for charging and for data transfer.

B The USB input can only be used for charging.



The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar



The maximum coat hooks load is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

- Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Glasses holder



Maximum storage compartment load is 0.25 kg.

NOTICE

› Do not leave heat-sensitive objects in the glasses holder.

Pencil holder

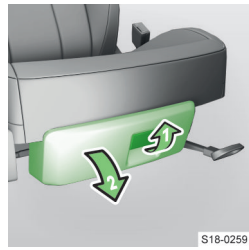


Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

› Only insert a broom from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.

› Always insert the umbrella all the way into the storage compartment.

Storage compartment for hand brush

Overview



NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

› Only insert a broom from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.
› Always insert the broom all the way into the storage compartment.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

› The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
› Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

The Phone box function

› Wireless phone charging.
› Amplifies the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

Phone box is located at the front of the centre console storage compartment.

Insert a phone no larger than 160x83 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging indicator

Applies to Swing Infotainment system.

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

› White – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.
› Grey – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged.
› Red – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.
› Symbol not displayed – function unavailable.

Charging indicator

Applies to Bolero and Columbus Infotainment systems.

The charging status is indicated by the text on the Infotainment screen.

Recommendations for optimal function

› The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.
› Insert the phone without its protective case.
› Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system display shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged. The symbol is illuminated in the status bar.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Replace the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.
› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder



› To open, flip the lid.

Cup holder Easy Open



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

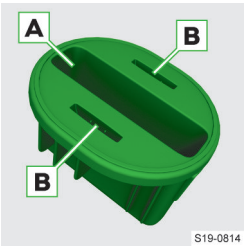
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Multimedia holder

Overview

The multimedia holder is inserted into the cup holder.

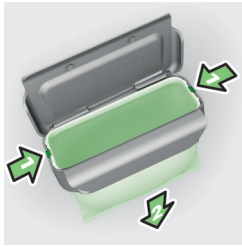


A Space for the phone

B Space for coins

Waste container

Replacing the bag





Ceiling

Removing and inserting

The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations:

› On the guide rods of the front headrests

› In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Tablet holder

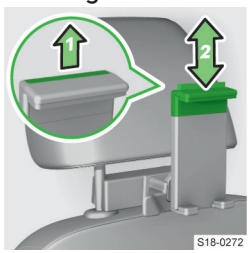
Settings

Tilting and rotating





Resizing

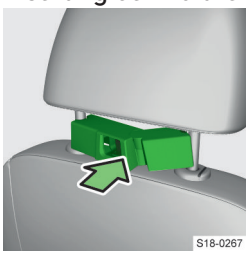


› Pull out the latch and slide the top of the holder to the desired position.

Reduce the empty holder to the minimum size so that it does not resonate while driving.

Removing and inserting

Inserting behind the headrest



› Place the unfastened adapter onto the front headrest guide bars and snap it in carefully.

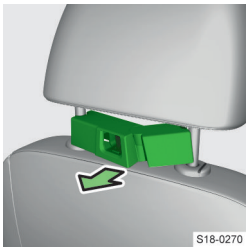


› Snap the bracket into the adapter.

Removing



› Press the lock mechanisms and remove the holder.



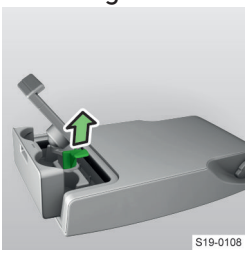
› Push the adapter and remove it.

Inserting it into the rear armrest



› Snap the bracket into the hole.

Removing



› Press the lock mechanisms and remove the holder.

Technical data and specifications

The holder is designed to hold a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and a maximum of 19.5 cm.

Maximum holder load is 0.75 kg.

12V socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical system

› Only use the sockets to connect approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of discharging the 12V vehicle battery by connected appliances!

The sockets work even when the ignition is switched off.

230-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

› Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Functionality

Status display

› Lights up in green - the socket is switched on.

› Green light flashes - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been

switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Engine running

The socket also works during the STOP phase on vehicles equipped with START-STOP system.

Troubleshooting

The warning light flashes red

The socket is switched off, e.g. for the following reasons:

› Excessive current load
› Low battery charge of the 12V vehicle battery
› Overheating of the socket
› If the socket does not switch on automatically after the above reasons have passed, disconnect the appliance from the socket and reconnect it after a while.

230 volt socket and USB connections



The USB connections are for charging only.

Storage compartment

Overview

A card holder and pencil holder are inside the storage compartment.

Maximum storage compartment load is 3 kg.

Roof rack and the towing device

Roof rack

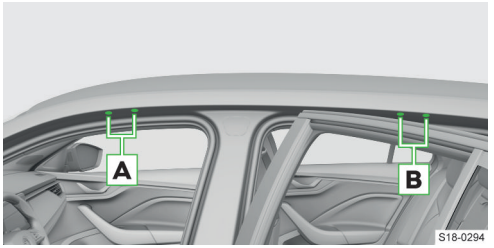
What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› When using the roof rack, close the sliding/tilting roof.

Technical data and specifications

The maximum weight of the load including the roof rack is 75 kg.



Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can attach the transverse roof racks to mounting points A and B, or to the longitudinal roof rack.

› We recommend using roof racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Applies to CNG-powered vehicles.

In the event of an accident, an incorrectly installed or unsuitable towing device may damage the vehicle's CNG tanks, exacerbating the consequences of an accident or causing fatal injuries.

› Due to the specific design of vehicles equipped with CNG pressure tanks, we recommend that only genuine Škoda towing brackets are used, as Škoda is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for this type of vehicle.

› It is recommended that all related installation work is carried out by Škoda service partners.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not tamper with the tow bar release switch when a trailer or other attachment is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could come loose.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the towing device with care.

› Do not stand near the centre of the rear bumper when the tow bar is swinging out.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing device!

› When the towing device is not in use, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Retrofitting the towing bracket

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the fuel tank!

On some vehicles, it is necessary to remove the aerodynamic exhaust cover on the chassis before retrofitting the towing device.

› Check with a specialist garage to find out if the aerodynamic cover needs to be removed on your vehicle.

Swinging the tow bar in and out

Swinging the tow bar out



Octavia / Octavia Combi

› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will swing out. The ⇳ indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Push the towing arm until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the switch illuminates.

Swinging the tow bar in

NOTICE

› No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.

› A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



Octavia / Octavia Combi

› Pull the switch on the right side of the luggage compartment. The tow bar will release. The indicator light in the switch flashes.



› Swing the tow bar back under the bumper until it clicks audibly.

Locking check: the indicator light in the switch illuminates.

Coupling and uncoupling the trailer or accessories

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

WARNING

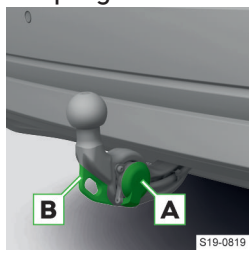
Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

The towing bracket has an 13-pin socket . If the trailer has a 7-pin plug, use a corresponding reduction piece from Škoda Genuine Accessories.

Coupling



1. Swing the tow bar out.
2. Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.
3. Insert the electrical plug into the socket A.
4. Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B. The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Towing device fault

The indicator light in the switch is not lit or flashing, or the tow bar cannot be locked.

1. Do not use the towing device.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

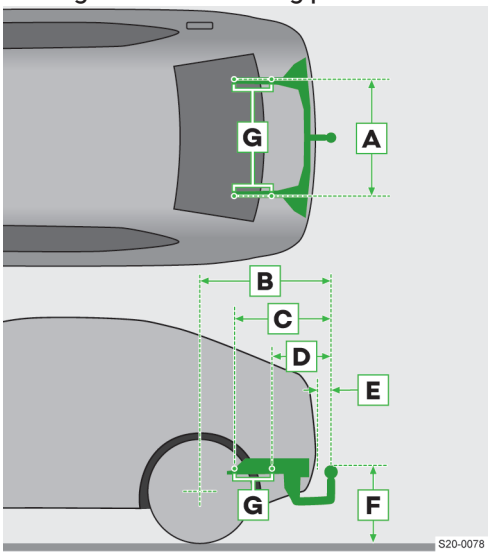
Unsecured tow bar

illuminated

› Secure the tow bar.

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



- **A** Mounting points spacing
- **B** Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball
- **C** Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
- **D** Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
- **E** Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)
- **F** Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)
- **G** Mounting points on the bodywork

Value in mm	
A	1040
B	1185.5
C	587.3
D	367.3
E	at least 65
F	350 – 420

Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 80 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your Škoda Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing device, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories

When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks,, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

The maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

The total permissible mass of the mounted accessories including the load must correspond to the maximum vertical load on the towing ball when using the trailer, the value being indicated in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the value of the maximum vertical load of the towing ball with the trailer used is higher than 75 kg, the total permissible mass of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value is applicable if the centre of gravity of the load is not more than 30 cm from the tow ball.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the tow ball is greater than 30 cm, the maximum permissible total weight of the accessory including its load must be reduced, e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball by one half.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball of the towing bracket is 70 cm, then the total permissible total mass of the accessory including its load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- › Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball.
- › Do not exceed the permissible weight of the trailer or other accessories, e.g. bicycle rack.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket and the vehicle itself!

- › When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maintenance and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster display.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service interval, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the Škoda Auto warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Displaying the service due date

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > menu item for the service

Or:

MENU > > > menu item for the service

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed when the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Škoda Service Partner

All Škoda authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda genuine parts

We recommend using Škoda Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by Škoda Auto. These parts are fully compliant with Škoda Auto regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

Škoda Auto is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Škoda genuine accessories

We recommend that you use Škoda Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, Škoda Auto is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
› The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult a Škoda Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

⚠ NOTICE

Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Engine blockheater

⚠ NOTICE

A retrofitted engine blockheater on 2.0 litre diesel engines can cause engine corrosion.

› Do not install an engine block heater on diesel engines.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-fitted with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in the event of an unauthorised installation in another vehicle (e.g. following a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Škoda prepaid service

Applies to the Czech Republic

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Interior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

⚠ NOTICE

› Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
› Do not use any leather polish, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover or similar agents for the Suedia seat covers.
› Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
› Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

› If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

› Over time, Suedia and leather materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
› Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.
› Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel

› Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

› Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
› Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!

› Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
› Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

› Do not dry clean the seat belts.
› Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

› Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
› Remove recent stains with water, a slightly moistened cotton cloth or a woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When cleaning Suedia and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a special cleaning glove. Remove any pilling with a brush.

Plastic parts

› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system
› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents designed for this purpose.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Digital instrument cluster display, Head-up display

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)].

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel, AdBlue® etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ NOTICE

AdBlue® damages some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.
› Wash the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
› Remove the dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
› Do not treat matte painted parts with polish or hard wax.
› Do not polish foils.
› We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from Škoda original accessories. These ensure that the protective paint layer on the seals and window guides is not damaged.
› Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the rod of the roof antenna, etc.
› Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle needs to move freely in the car wash, the following conditions must be met before entering:

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Vehicles with manual gearbox have the shift lever in neutral
- ✓ Vehicles with automatic transmission have the selector lever in N mode
- ✓ Electric parking brake is switched off
- ✓ Deactivated Auto Hold function

ⓘ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

› Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with wax protection

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Washing with a pressure washer

ⓘ NOTICE

› Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.

› Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  - › Films
  - › Lock cylinders
  - › Gaps on the vehicle
  - › Towing bracket socket
  - › Tilting towing arm
  - › Camera lenses and sensors
  - › Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

ⓘ NOTICE

› Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.

› Clean the cameras with a hand brush.

› Only move the scraper in one direction.

› Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.

› Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.

› Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Hand washing

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.

› Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights [1].

› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.

› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.

› Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.

› Do not use any solvent-based cleaners, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects on the wiper blades as they will damage the graphite layer of the blades during cleaning.

› Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

› Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.

› Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.

› The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60°C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Protect the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.

› Use a polish for paint that has turned matte.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

› sunlight

› moisture

› air pollution

› stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

---

[1] A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Car jack

› If necessary, apply a suitable grease to the moving parts.

Towing bracket

› If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

Ice scraper

On the opening of the fuel filler flap



Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2) specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by law.



Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

› on the right in the engine compartment on the shock absorber cover

› on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner

› on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturer

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN display

VIN is displayed in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > > menu item for the service

Or:

MENU > > > menu item for the service

Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Stickers and labels

Overview

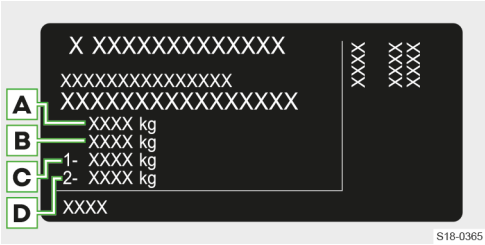
From the factory, stickers and labels with important information for the operation of the car are placed on the engine compartment and on some parts of the vehicle.

› Never remove stickers and labels. They should remain legible.

Axle weights and loads

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar.



A Permissible total weight

B Permissible total weight of the loaded combination of vehicles, if the vehicle is used for towing

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles

The indicated value is valid for altitudes up to 1,000 m above see level.

As the altitude increases, the engine power decreases and the car's climbing ability decreases.

Therefore, the permissible total weight of the combined vehicle must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1000 m altitude.

The permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles is the sum of the weight of the loaded vehicle and the weight of the loaded trailer.

Payloads

Use the difference between the permissible total weight of the vehicle and the operating weight to find the approximate maximum payload weight.

The payload includes the following components:

- The weight of the passengers
- The weight of all luggage and other cargo
- The weight of the load on the roof, including the weight of the roof racks
- The weight of the equipment excluded from the operating weight
- Vertical ball head load when using a towing device » *page 238*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes the driver's weight of 75 kg, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a min. 90% full fuel tank. .

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	manual	1398	1410
	automatic	1421	1433
1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	1340	1352
1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC	automatic	1368	1380/1421 a)
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	manual	1303	1315
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1307	1319
	automatic	1339	1352
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1342	1354/1394 a)
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	automatic	1443	1455
	automatic 4x4	1544	1557/1590 a)
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	automatic	1299	1311
2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR	manual	1429	1441/1483 a)
	automatic	1436	1448
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	manual	1379	1391
	automatic	1405	1417

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	manual	1434	1446
	automatic	1465	1477
	automatic 4x4	1563	1575/1622 a)
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic 4x4	1578	1590/1620 a)
a) Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.			

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	manual	1490	1502
	automatic	1521 a)/1513	1533 a)/1525
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	automatic	1522	1533
	automatic 4x4	1605	1616
a) Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6AP emission standard.			

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification		Value (in mm)	
		Octavia	Octavia Combi
Vehicle height	Basic dimensions	1470	1468/1488 a)
	Vehicles with the 1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine and 2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine	1469	1467
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors		1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors		2003	2003
Ground clearance	Basic dimensions	143	142/163 a)
	Vehicles with the 1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine	143	143
	Vehicles with the 2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine	140	140
Vehicle length		4689	4689/4703 a)
a) Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.			

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Octavia 4x4	Octavia Combi 4x4
Vehicle height	1468	1467/1487 a)
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2003	2003
Ground clearance	139	141/161 a)
Vehicle length	4689	4689/4703 a)
a) Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.		

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Octavia RS	Octavia Combi RS
Vehicle height	1456 a)/1457	1454 a)/1455
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1829	1829
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2003	2003
Ground clearance	128 a)/129	128 a)/129
Vehicle length	4702	4702
a) Applies to Octavia 4x4 vehicles.		

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, further referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, further referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which the accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The vehicle's speed

The recorded data allows how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident to be analysed. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Assistant for keeping your lane (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age and location of the accident is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect the EDR content to other data sources to help identify the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment used to read the EDR data.

Škoda Auto will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions relating to personal data protection.

To view the current personal data protection statement, please use the following link or load the QR-code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the 2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine.

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA declares that the radio equipment type 013854 complies with the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available on the website at the following address: **http://www.hella.com/vw**

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 as follows:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeoman Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial Škoda

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the Škoda website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market
- Information on the Technical Regulation on radio equipment approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers

To view the information, please use the following link or load the QR code:

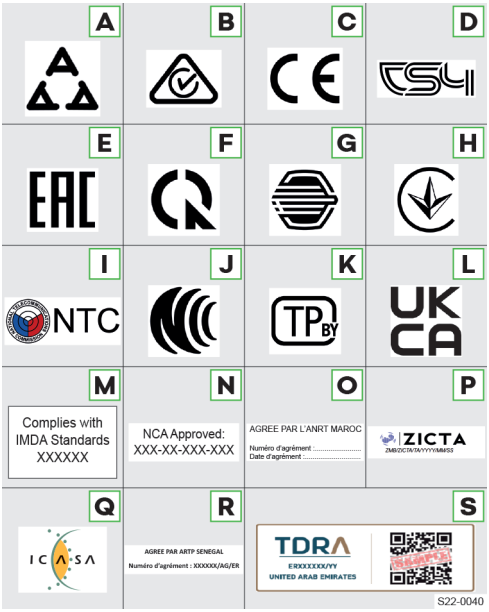
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



A Serbia

B Australia and New Zealand

C Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)

D Armenia

E Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)

F Vietnam

G Mongolia

H Ukraine
I Philippines
J Taiwan
K Belarus
L Great Britain
M Singapore
N Ghana
O Morocco
P Zambia
Q South Africa
R Senegal
S United Arab Emirates

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Central locking remote control key	433.05 – 434.79 MHz	10 mW
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Keyless car locking	125 kHz	76 dBµA/m 89 dBµA/m
WLAN – hotspot	2412 – 2472 MHz 2400 – 2483.5 MHz 2402 – 2442 MHz 2408 – 2480 MHz 5180 – 5825 MHz 5190 – 5795 MHz	14 dBm 10 dBm 20 dBm 4.1 dBm 11 dBm 9 dBm
WLAN 2.4 GHz	2412 – 2480 MHz	63 mW
WLAN 5 GHz	5745 – 5850 MHz	25 mW
Bluetooth	2402 – 2480 MHz	20 mW
Infotainment	MW (AM): 531 – 1602 kHz FM: 87.5 – 108 MHz DAB: (BAND III): 174.928 – 239.2 MHz Bluetooth: 2400 – 2483.5 MHz	– – – 10 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	111 kHz	42 dBµA/m
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76 – 77 GHz 24.050 – 24.25 GHz	23.38 dBm <20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52 – 1.7 MHz FM: 87 – 108 MHz DAB: 174 – 240 MHz GNSS: 1559.052 – 1605.375 MHz	– – – –

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620 – 2690 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791 – 821 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W LTE: 23 dBm/0.2 W
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz) Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
Analog instrument cluster: Global / Basic / Medium	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Virtual cockpit: FPK Entry	125 kHz	-2.5 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Applies to Germany

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end-user, you have a legal obligation to surrender used batteries.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

› Used batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner in EU member states and other countries.
› High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol.

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

› Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
› You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Product recycling

The following instructions apply to France.



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of items:

› Car keys
› Remote control of independent heating and ventilation
› Compressor
› Charging cable
› Card with mobile key



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of item:

› Fire extinguisher



The recycling instructions in the image apply to documents, packaging or bags for the following items:

› Owner's manual
› Car first aid kit
› Fire extinguisher
› Compressor
› Charging cables
› Charging socket and sealing cap
› Tool kit
› Tyre repair kit
› Warning triangle
› Reflective vest
› Tool bag

ⓘ Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Some terms in this Manual have an ® or a ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

› **"AdBlue®"** is a registered VDA trademark.
› **"Android Auto™"** is a registered trademark of theGoogle Inc company.

- **“Apple CarPlay™”, “Siri®”** are registered trademarks of the Apple Inc company.
- **“Bluetooth®”** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc company.
- **“HDMI, logo HDMI”** are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- **“MirrorLink®, logo MirrorLink®”** are registered trademarks of Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.
- **“Windows®”** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your Škoda Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new Škoda vehicle, Škoda Genuine Parts and Škoda Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible Škoda Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is duly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN) in the “Vehicle handover documentation” section in this Owner´s Manual.

Škoda Warranty for new vehicles

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, Škoda Partners provide you with the Škoda new vehicle warranty (hereinafter referred to as the“Škoda Warranty”) under the following terms and conditions.

Under the Škoda Warranty, Škoda Partners provide the following benefits[1]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty.

  In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the Škoda Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the Škoda Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a Škoda Partner to the first buyer who is not a Škoda Partner[2].

Škoda Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any Škoda Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the Škoda Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the defective parts. The Škoda authorised workshop will determine the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škodaauthorised workshop´s capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the Škoda authorised workshop.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The Škoda Warranty can be claimed at any Škoda authorised workshop. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the Škoda Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of Škoda Auto, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the Škoda Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to an expert servicing workshop or was not properly rectified without undue delay.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, 12-volt vehicle battery, etc.

---

1) In some countries, Škoda Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the Škoda Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, please refer to the purchase contract with your Škoda Partner or the accompanying documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the Škoda Warranty can only be exercised with Škoda Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by Škoda Auto (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, besides other things, ignoring the warning lights and warning messages of the car or failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This Škoda Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the Škoda Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the vehicle.

Škoda Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the Škoda authorised workshop, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the Škoda authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the Škoda Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the Škoda Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your Škoda Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional Škoda Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a Škoda Extended Warranty with your new vehicle, Škoda Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

the Škoda Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the Škoda Extended Warranty, the conditions of the Škoda Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the Škoda Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the Škoda authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škodaauthorised workshop´s capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion are unaffected by the Škoda Extended Warranty.

The Škoda Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the Škoda Extended Warranty, please contact your Škoda Partner.

🛈 The Škoda Mobility Guarantee and the Škoda Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

Engine specifications

1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Octavia

Output (kW/rpm)	96/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	200/1400–4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	220	220
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.5	9.6

Octavia Combi

Output (kW/rpm)	96/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	200/1400–4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	214	214
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.6	9.7

1.0 l/81 kW TSI e-TEC engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5500	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	200/2000–3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	202	202
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.5	10.6

1.5 l/110 kW TSI e-TEC engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	automatic	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	229	228/223 [a)]
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.6	8.6/8.8 [a)]
[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.		

1.0 l/81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5500	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	200/2000–3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	manual	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	202	202
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.8	11.0

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Octavia

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	223	222
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.2	8.5

Octavia Combi

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	220	216
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.3	8.6

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498	
Gearbox	manual	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	223	223
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.5	8.6/8.7 [a)]

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Octavia

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	automatic	automatic 4x4
Output (kW/rpm)	140/4180–6000	140/4200–6000
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1500–4180	320/1500–4100
Maximum speed (km/h)	229	229
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.4	6.8

Octavia Combi

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	automatic	automatic 4x4
Output (kW/rpm)	140/4180–6000	140/4200–6000
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1500–4180	320/1500–4100
Maximum speed (km/h)	229	229
With specified gear engaged	5	5/6 [a)]
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.5	6.9/7.2 [a)]
[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.		

2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine

Octavia RS

Output (kW/rpm)	180/5,250 – 6,500 (5,000 – 6,500) [a)]	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	370/1600–4300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	250	250
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.8	6.6
[a)] Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6ZD emission standard.		

Octavia Combi RS

Output (kW/rpm)	180/5,250 – 6,500 (5,000 – 6,500) [a)]	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	370/1600–4300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	250	250
With specified gear engaged	5	5/6 [a)]
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.8	6.7
[a)] Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6ZD emission standard.		

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5800	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	152/3850–4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Gearbox	automatic	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	199	192
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	12.7	12.9

2.0 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Octavia

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Output (kW/rpm)	85/2750–4250	85/3250–4250
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	300/1600–2500	250/1500–3250
Maximum speed (km/h)	214	214
With specified gear engaged	5	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.2	10.6

Octavia Combi

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Output (kW/rpm)	85/2750–4250	85/3250–4250
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	300/1600–2500	250/1500–3250
Maximum speed (km/h)	208/205 [a)]	207
With specified gear engaged	5	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.3/10.5 [a)]	10.7

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine

Octavia

Output (kW/rpm)	105/3500–4000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1750–3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	225	222
With specified gear engaged	6	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.7	8.9

Octavia Combi

Output (kW/rpm)	105/3500–4000	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	320/1750–3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	219	217
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.8	9.0

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Octavia

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Gearbox	manual	automatic	automatic 4x4
Output (kW/rpm)	110/3250–4200	110/3000–4200	110/3000–4200
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	340/1600–3000	360/1600–2750	360/1600–2750
Maximum speed (km/h)	236	233	227
With specified gear engaged	6	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.7	8.6	8.5

Octavia Combi

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Gearbox	manual	automatic	automatic 4x4
Output (kW/rpm)	110/3250–4200	110/3000–4200	110/3000–4200
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	340/1600–3000	360/1600–2750	360/1600–2750
Maximum speed (km/h)	227	225	222/217 [a)]
With specified gear engaged	6	7	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.8	8.7	8.6/9.0 [a)]

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	147/3600–4100	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1750–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	automatic 4x4	
Bodywork	Octavia	Octavia Combi
Maximum speed (km/h)	245	240/234 [a)]
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	6.9	7.0/7.2 [a)]
[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.		

Octavia RS

Output (kW/rpm)	147/3600–4100	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1750–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	automatic	automatic 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	250	245
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.4	7.1

Octavia Combi RS

Output (kW/rpm)	147/3600–4100	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1750–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Gearbox	automatic	automatic 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	245	240
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	7.4	7.1

Index

Numbers and symbols

12V battery
Fault 205
12V vehicle battery 204
Charging 204
Checking the condition 204
Disconnecting and connecting 205
Indicator lights 205
Protection against discharge 204
Safety 22
see 12V vehicle battery 204

A

ABS 171
ACC 176
interrupting the cruise control 178
setting the distance 178
START-STOP system 177
Accident
Data recorder 247
Accident data recorder 247
Acid 204
Adaptive chassis 164
Adaptive Cruise Control 176
Adaptive headlights 60
Adaptive Headlights
activation/deactivation 60
AdBlue 197
checking 197
indicator light 198
Safety 22
standard 197
tank capacity 198
topping up 197
Air conditioning
see Manual air conditioning 67
Air conditioning system
see Climatronic 68
Airbag 54
Activation 55
Deactivating airbags 55
Fault 55
Location 55
Safety 54
Turning off the passenger front airbag 56
Airbag switch 56
Signalling 56
Alarm 33
trailer 33
All-season tyres 211
Analog instrument cluster 76
Analog instrument cluster display 76
Android Auto
Bolero Infotainment system 116
Columbus Infotainment system 142
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 94
Anonymous vehicle data 152
Apple CarPlay
Bolero Infotainment system 116
Columbus Infotainment system 142
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 94
Armrest
Front 45
rear 45
ASR 171
Assist systems
Driver 171
Parking 186
Safety 25
Assist systems for emergency situations 184
Assistant for keeping your lane
see Lane Assist 178
Auto Hold 169
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 172
Automatic gearbox 161
Manual changing gears with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 162
Automatic recuperation assistant
see Eco Assist 184
Auxiliary heating and ventilation 72
Availability of Škoda Connect services 150

B

Background lighting 63
Backrest
Opening for ski bag 45
Battery
48-volt battery 169
Bolero Infotainment system 98
Bonnet 193
Boot 218
12 volt socket 218
Fasteners 219

Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 218
Rigid boot cover 224
Securing nets 222
Storage compartments 218
Trailer hitch switch 218
Variable loading floor 225
Boot lid 39
Automatic locking 38
Boot lidContactless operation 40
Manual operation 38
Manual release 40
Troubleshooting 39
Brake fluid 167
Safety 22
Brake pads 168
Brakes 167
Breakdown call 158

C

Car seat
see Child seat 50
Cargo elements 219
Ceiling 233
Central locking 30
SAFE function 30
Central locking button 31
Centre console 15
Charging your phone wirelessly 232
Checking the vehicle before the journey 23
Child lock 34
Child seat 50
Fastened with a safety belt 52
Grouping 51
i-Size 53
ISOFIX 52, 54
Recommended child seats 51
Securing children properly 24
TOP TETHER 54
Types of fasteners 54
Child seats
In the front passenger seat 51
Cleaning the vehicle
Exterior 241
Instructions for cleaning the exterior 242
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 241
Interior 240
Climatronic 68
at the back of the central console 70, 71
Setting up classic air conditioning for Columbus Infotainment system 71
Setting up classic air conditioning for Swing Infotainment system 70
Setting up smart air conditioning 69
Starting the control menu 69
CNG 201
Coasting
see Driving in neutral 162
Columbus Infotainment system 124
Coming Home 61
Coming Home, Leaving Home
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Compartments 227, 228
Compressed natural gas 201
Control centre
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Control Centre
Infotainment Bolero 103
Infotainment Columbus 129
Infotainment Swing 85
Convenience signalling 59
Coolant 195
Checking 195
Checking and topping up 195
Safety 22
Specification 195
Temperature gauge 195
Troubleshooting 195
Cooling system 67, 69
Crew Protect Assist
See Proactive Occupant Protection 183
Cruise control
Indicator light 175
Cruise control system 175
Cup holder 232
Cyber security
Bolero Infotainment system 110
Columbus Infotainment system 136
Swing Infotainment system 90

D

Data connection 156
Daytime running lights 58
Automatic switching on/off 58
DCC 164
Diesel
Refuelling 200
Requirements for refuelling 200
Diesel fuel 200
Fuel tank capacity 201
Misfuelling protection 200
Prescribed fuel 201
Standards 200
Troubleshooting 200
Digital assistant Laura
Bolero Infotainment system 101
Columbus Infotainment system 127
Digital instrument cluster
see Virtual cockpit 77
Doors
Opening/closing 34
Driver Alert
see Fatigue detection 183
Driver's seat 15
Driving data 79
Resetting 79

Driving in neutral 162
Driving modes
Eco 163
Individual 163
Normal 163
Off road 164
Sport 163
Driving with a trailer 164
Safety 25
Trailer stability assist 171
DSR 171
Dynamic Light Assist
see headlight assistant 61

E

Earth point 205
eBKV 171
Eco Assist 184
Economical driving
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Economical driving style 164
EDS 171
Electric parking brake 168
Electric window control 35
Force limiter 35
Electric window operation
Activation 36
Operation 35
Troubleshooting 36
Electrical parking brake 168
Emergency
Emergency call 26
Using the jump start cables 205
What to do after an accident 27
What to do in the event of a fire 27
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 184
Emergency calls 26
Emergency equipment 218
Jack 219
Tool kit 219
Emergency wheel
Safe driving 25
Engine compartment 16
Coolant 195
Engine oil 194
Safety 22, 193
Engine number 244
Engine oil 194
Changing 194
Indicator light 194
Refilling 194
Safety 22
Specification 193
Engine specifications
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Equipment in the boot 218
ESC 171
ESC Sport 171, 172
Exhaust gas control system 197
Exit warning 190
Explanations 9
Exterior mirrors 47

F

Fasteners in the boot 219
Fatigue detection 183
Fault in the engine control system 196
Fire extinguisher 219
First aid kit 218
Fog lights
Front 59
Rear 59
Fogged windows 68
Fogging 72
Force limiter 36
Front Assist 172
Distance warning 172
Front fog lights 59
Front headlights
tilt adjustment 57
Front seats
Electrically controlled 41
Manually controlled 41
Front vehicle area 12
Fuel
CNG 201
Diesel fuel 200
Petrol 198
Fuel filler flap 197
Fuel filter 197
Fuel tank
Opening the fuel filler flap 197
Fuel tank capacity
Diesel fuel 201
Petrol 199
Fuses 206
in the dash panel 207
In the engine compartment 208
Replacement 206

G

G- TEC (CNG-powered vehicle) 201
Gear shifting
Manual gearbox 161

H

Hazard warning lights 60
Head-up display 78
Headlight Assist System 61
Headlight range 57
Headlights
Adaptive Headlights 60
Headrests 44
Heated steering wheel 75

HHC
see Hill Hold Control 171
High beam 59
High beam assistant 61
Hill descent assist 184
Activation conditions 184
functionality 184
Hill Hold Control 171
Hook
in interior 228
Hooks
In the boot 219

I

i-Size 53
Ice scraper 14
Images
Columbus Infotainment system 129
Immobiliser 160
Independent auxiliary heating and ventilation
Replacing the battery in the remote control 73
Troubleshooting 73
Indicator lights
Introduction 17
Overview 17
Information calls 157
Infotainment display
Bolero Infotainment system 98
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Infotainment keypad
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Infotainment online 158
Infotainment overview
Columbus Infotainment system 124
Infotainment Overview
Infotainment Swing 82
Infotainment restart
Columbus Infotainment system 125
Swing Infotainment system 83
Infotainment screen
Infotainment Bolero 99
Infotainment Columbus 125
Infotainment Screen
Infotainment Swing 83
Infotainment setting
Columbus Infotainment system 124
Swing Infotainment system 82
Infotainment settings
Bolero Infotainment system 98
Infotainment Swing 82
Infotainment system
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Infotainment system restart
Bolero Infotainment system 99
Infotainment update
Bolero Infotainment system 99
Columbus Infotainment system 125
Swing Infotainment system 83
Instrument cluster
analog instrument cluster 76
Virtual cockpit 77
Interior background lighting 63
Interior equipment
12V socket 234
Broom storage compartment 231
Cup holder 232
Glasses holder 227
Make-up mirror 227
Multimedia holder 233
Parking permit holder 227
Storage compartment for umbrella 231
Storage compartments 227
Tablet holder 233
Interior fittings
12 volt socket 218, 228
230 volt socket 228, 234
Coat hook 228
Load-through bag 227
Map pockets 228
Storage compartment under the front seat 231
Storage compartments 228
Interior lighting 62
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Interior mirror 47
ISOFIX 54
Placement in the seat 52
Retaining rings 54

J

Jump start cables 205

K

Key 29
Keyboard
Infotainment Bolero 100
Infotainment Columbus 126
Infotainment Swing 84
Keyless locking (KESSY) 32
Kick-down 162

L

Lane Assist 178
Lane change assist
See Side Assist 181
Launch-control 162
Leaving Home 61
Lever
Headlight Assist 62
High beam 59
Light assist 61
Turn signal 59
Wipers and washers 64
Liability for faults
see Warranty 253
Lifting the vehicle 213

Light
Headlight Assist System 61
Light Assist
see the High Beam Assistant 61
Light switch 57
Lighting
background 63
Exterior 57
Interior 62
Lights 57
Adaptive Headlights 60
Automatic switching on/off 58
Control 57
Corner function 60
driving in the opposite direction of traffic 58
Fog lights 59
Hazard warning lights 60
Headlamps washers 64
Headlight flasher 59
headlight range control 57
High beam 59
Parking lights 60
Troubleshooting 58
Turn signal 59
Limiter
see Speed limiter 173
Load distribution 164
Load-through bag 227
Locking 30, 32
Low beam 58
Luggage compartment
Double-sided carpet 224
multifunction pocket 222
Net partition 223
Roll-up cover 225
Transporting objects safely 24
Luggage compartment carpet 224

M

Main beam
Headlight Assist System 61
Manual air conditioning 67
Settings 67
Starting the control menu 67
Manual gearbox 161
MATRIX headlights
see headlight assistant 61
MCB 171
Media
Bolero Infotainment system 107
Columbus Infotainment system 133
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 88
Traffic program 89
Memory function of the seat 42
MirrorLink
Bolero Infotainment system 116
Columbus Infotainment system 142
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 94
Mirrors
see Exterior mirrors 47
see Interior mirror 47
Mobile device management
Swing Infotainment system 90
Mobile devices management
Bolero Infotainment system 110
Columbus Infotainment system 136
Monitoring the surroundings
see Area View 188
MSR 171
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 171
Multifunction pocket 222
Multimedia holder 233
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6

N

Navigation
Bolero Infotainment system 119
Columbus Infotainment system 145
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Net partition 223
Nets 222
New vehicle or new parts 21
Notes on starting 160

O

Off road 164
Oil
see Engine oil 194
Online service management 155
Online services
Availability 150
Breakdown call 158
Data connection 156
Information calls 157
MyŠkoda application 151
Online service management 155
Personalisation 154
Planning a service visit 158
Shop 157
Škoda Connect 150
Škoda Connect services 158
Škoda Connect services user registration and activation 151
System update 156
User management 152
Vehicle's health card 158
Online services activation 151
Opening in the backrest 45

P

Park assist
Troubleshooting 192

Park steering assistant 190
Parking
Parking aid 186
Rear Traffic Alert. 189
Rear view camera 187
Safe stopping of the vehicle 26
Parking aid 186
Parking assist systems 186
Parking brake 168
see electric parking brake 168
Parking lights 58, 60
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 186
Partition in the boot 226
Passenger front airbag switch
Switch fault 56
Passenger seat 15
Pedestrian Detection 173
Personal data 151, 248
Personalisation 154
Personalization
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Petrol 198
Conditions for refuelling 199
Fuel tank capacity 199
Refilling 199
Refuelling with other fuel 199
Specified petrol 198
Standards 198
Phone
Bolero Infotainment system 112
Columbus Infotainment system 138
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 92
Phonebox 232
Planning a service visit 158
Power assisted steering 46
Power sockets
230 volt socket 234
Predictive Adaptive Cruise control 176

R

Radiator blinds 197
Radio
Bolero Infotainment system 103
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 85
Radio systems in the vehicle 248
Rear armrest
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Rear fog light 59
Rear seats
Folding down 43
Rear Traffic Alert 189
Rear vehicle area 14
Rear view camera 187
Operation 187
Recirculated air mode 67, 69
Recycling 252
Refilling
Coolant 195
Engine oil 194
Petrol 199
Windscreen washer fluid 64
Reflective vest 218
Refuelling
Diesel fuel 200
Remote access to the vehicle 158
Remote control of the independent auxiliary heating and ventilation
Replacing the battery 73
Resetting the odometer 77
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 253
Rigid boot cover 224
Roll-up luggage compartment cover 225
Roof rack 236
Fixing roof racks 236
Roof loading 236
Safe driving 25

S

SAFE – function 30
Safe driving 25
Safety
Before driving 21
Child seat 24
Climatic conditions 26
Driving through water 25
Emergency call 26
Exiting the vehicle 26
Indicator lights 25
New vehicle or new parts 21
Seat belt webbing 23
Sensors and cameras 22
Sitting correctly 23
Transporting loads and objects 24
Vehicle adjustments 21
What to do after an accident 27
What to do in the event of a fire 27
Scheduling a service visit
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Seat belts 49
Adjusting the height 50
Automatic belt retractor 49
Belt tensioners 49
Blocked belt retractor 50
Correct webbing 23
Fastening and unfastening 49
Reversible belt tensioners 49
safety 49
Status display 49
Seat heating 74
Seat massage function 43
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Seat memory

see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Seat ventilation 74
Seats 41
Folding down 43
Heating 74
ISOFIX 54
Memory function of the seat 42
Sitting safely 23
TOP TETHER 54
Ventilation 74
Service events 239
Displaying the due date 239
Intervals 239
Resetting information 239
Service work 239
SET functional surface 80
Setting Personal data protection 152
Setting the tyre pressure 216
Shades
Electrical operation of the sunshade 37
Shop 157
Side Assist 181
Side vehicle area 12
Sidelights
see Parking lights 60
Skis 227
Škoda Connect services
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Škoda Prepaid service 240
Sliding/tilting roof 36
Electrical operation of the sunshade 37
Operation 36
Small broom 231
SmartLink
Bolero Infotainment system 116
Columbus Infotainment system 142
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Swing Infotainment system 94
Snow chains 211
Sockets
12V socket 234
Safety 23
Spare wheel 212
Safe driving 25
Speed limiter 173
Indicator light 173
START-STOP 161
Starter button 160
Starting 160
Starting the vehicle
Using the jump start cables 205
Steering column lock 46
Steering wheel 46
Buttons 46, 76, 77
Correct position 24
Heating 75
Manual changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 162
Stopping the engine 160
Storage 228
Sun protection
Sun protectionOperation of the rear sun protection roller blind 37
Sun protectionOperation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 37
Sunshades 38
Supported media files
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Supported media sources
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Switching low beam on automatically 58
Switching off passenger front airbag 56
Switching off the passenger front airbag
Signalling 56
System
Bolero Infotainment system 98
Columbus Infotainment system 124
Swing Infotainment system 82
System and Infotainment updates
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
System update 156

T

Tablet holder 233
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Technical data and specifications 244
Vehicle dimensions 246
Temporary wheel 212
The boot lid
setting the top position 39
Tips for economical driving 164
Tiptronic 162
Tool kit 219
TOP TETHER 54
Mounting eyelets 54
Top View 188
Topping up
AdBlue 197
Touch operation
Infotainment Swing 83
Touchscreen operation
Bolero Infotainment system 99
Columbus Infotainment system 125
Tow rope 167
Towing bracket 236
Tow bar loading 238
Troubleshooting 237
Towing device
Swinging the tow bar in and out 236
Towing eye 166
Towing the vehicle 166
Traffic accident
Emergency call 26
What to do after an accident 27
Traffic Sign Recognition 182
Trailer 164

alarm 33
Coupling and uncoupling 237
Permissible weight 165
Safe driving 25
Trailer stabilization system 171
Transport
Towing bracket 236
Transporting objects safely 24
Transporting children 24
Transporting items
Roof rack 236
Travel assist
see Travel Assist 179
Travel Assist 179
Trays 227
TSA
see Trailer stability assist 171
Turn signal 59
Type plate 244
Tyre pressure monitor 216
Tyres 210, 211
Overview of labelling 210
Pressure 215, 216
Puncture repair kit 215
Tread wear indicator 210, 211
tyre pressure gauge 219
Tyre pressure monitor 216

U

Umbrella 231
Unlocking 30, 32
USB 227, 228
User management 152
User registration 151

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 225
Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 239
Safety 21
Vehicle dimensions 246
Vehicle driving mode 163
Vehicle heath card 158
Vehicle height 246
Vehicle identification number (VIN) 244
Vehicle length 246
Vehicle status 80
Vehicle width 246
Vehicle's health card
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Vest
see Reflective vest 218
VIN
see Vehicle identification number 244
Virtual cockpit 77
Voice control
Bolero Infotainment system 101
Columbus Infotainment system 127
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6

W

Warning triangle 218
Warranty 253
Mobility Warranty 253
New vehicle warranty 253
Optional Extended Warranty 253
Rights arising from defective performance 253
Washers
see Wipers and washers 64
Washing in a car wash 241
Washing with a pressure washer 241
Waste container 233
Water in the fuel filter 197
Weight 244
Wheels 210
Bolt cover caps 216
Changing 213
Flat tyre 211
Full-width wheel trim 216
Full-width wheel trim Aero 216
Overview of tyre labelling 210
Pressure change 211
snow chains 211
spare and temporary wheel 212
Tread wear indicator 210, 211
Tyre pressure 215, 216
Tyre pressure monitor 216
Wi-Fi
Infotainment Bolero 115
Infotainment Columbus 141
Swing Infotainment system 94
Window
Heating 73
Windows 35
Windows heating 73
Windscreen washer fluid
How to refill the fluid 64
Low level 65
Windscreen wipers and washers
Low windscreen washer fluid 65
Refilling the windscreen washer fluid 64
Winter tyres 211
Wiper service position 65
Wipers and washers 64
Automatic rear wiper 64, 65
Automatic wiping 64
Replacing the wiper blade 65
WLAN
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6

X

XDS+ 171